Synergy 100 MD • Operator’s Manual

- Ross Part Number: 4400DR-103
- Document Issue: 7
- Software Issue: 7.2 MD-S100

The information contained in this Operator’s Manual is subject to change without notice or obligation.

Copyright

© 2007 Ross Video Limited. All rights reserved.

Contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any form without the written permission of Ross Video Limited. Reproduction or reverse engineering of copyrighted software is prohibited.

Notice

The material in this manual is furnished for informational use only. It is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as commitment by Ross Video Limited. Ross Video Limited assumes no responsibility or liability for errors or inaccuracies that may appear in this manual.

Trademarks

- is a registered trademark of Ross Video Limited.
- Ross, ROSS, ROSS®, and MLE are registered trademarks of Ross Video Limited.
- All other product names and any registered and unregistered trademarks mentioned in this guide are used for identification purposes only and remain the exclusive property of their respective owners.
## Important Regulatory and Safety Notices to Service Personnel

Before using this product and any associated equipment, refer to the “Important Safety Instructions” listed below to avoid personnel injury and to prevent product damage.

Product may require specific equipment, and/or installation procedures to be carried out to satisfy certain regulatory compliance requirements. Notices have been included in this publication to call attention to these specific requirements.

### Symbol Meanings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Protective Earth" /></td>
<td>This symbol identifies a Protective Earth (PE) terminal, which is provided for connection of the supply system’s protective earth (green or green/yellow) conductor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Warning" /></td>
<td>This symbol on the equipment refers you to important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions within the Product Manual Documentation. Failure to heed this information may present a major risk of damage or injury to persons or equipment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Warning" /></td>
<td>The symbol with the word “Warning” within the equipment manual indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Caution" /></td>
<td>The symbol with the word “Caution” within the equipment manual indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Notice" /></td>
<td>The symbol with the word “Notice” within the equipment manual indicates a situation which, if not avoided, may result in major or minor equipment damage or a situation which could place the equipment in a non-compliant operating state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Warning Hazardous Voltages" /></td>
<td>This symbol is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated “dangerous voltage” within the product enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of shock to persons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="ESD Susceptibility" /></td>
<td>This symbol is used to alert the user that an electrical or electronic device or assembly is susceptible to damage from an ESD event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Important Safety Instructions

1) Read these instructions.
2) Keep these instructions.
3) Heed all warnings.
4) Follow all instructions.
5) Do not use this apparatus near water.
6) Clean only with a dry cloth.
7) Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.
8) Do not install near heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.

9) Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The third prong is provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.

10) Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched, particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.

11) Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.

12) Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.

13) Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects having fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.

14) Do not expose this apparatus to dripping or splashing, and ensure that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, are placed on the apparatus.

15) To completely disconnect this apparatus from the AC Mains, disconnect the power supply cord plug from the AC receptacle.

16) The mains plug of the power supply cord shall remain readily operable.

17) The MD or MD-X (Live Production Engine) chassis is to be rack mounted only.

19) The safe operation of this product requires that a protective earth connection be provided. A grounding conductor in the equipment's supply cord provides this protective earth. To reduce the risk of electrical shock to the operator and service personnel, this ground conductor must be connected to an earthed ground.

20) **WARNING**: This apparatus, when equipped with multiple power supplies, can generate high leakage currents. To reduce the risk of electric shock, ensure that each individual supply cord is connected to its own separate branch circuit with an earth connection.

21) **CAUTION**: These service instructions are for use by qualified service personnel only. To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not perform any servicing other than that contained in the operating instructions unless you are qualified to do so (Engineering Manual only).

22) **Warning**: This apparatus contains Lithium batteries, which if replaced incorrectly, or with an incorrect type, may cause an explosion. Replace only with the same type. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer’s instruction.

23) Service barriers within this product are intended to protect the operator and service personnel from hazardous voltages. For continued safety, replace all barriers after servicing.

24) Certain parts of this equipment still present a safety hazard with the power switch in the OFF position. To avoid electrical shock, disconnect all A/C power cords from the chassis' rear appliance connectors before servicing.

25) This product contains safety critical parts, which, if incorrectly replaced, may present a risk of fire or electrical shock. Components contained within the product’s power supplies and power supply area are not intended to be customer-serviced and should be returned to the factory for repair.

26) To reduce the risk of fire, replacement fuses must be the same type and rating.
27) Use only power cords specified for this product and certified for the country of use. Refer to the Product Power Cord Requirement section that follows.

28) The safe operation of this equipment requires that the user heed and adhere to all installation and servicing instruction contained within the equipment’s Engineering Manuals.

**Product Power Cord Requirements**

**North American Line Voltages 100 - 120 Volt**

This product is supplied with certified 10A/125V SVT type supply cords. Conductors are color coded white (neutral), black (line), and green or green/yellow (ground).

Operation of this equipment at line voltages exceeding 130V requires that alternative supply cords with appropriate voltage and current ratings be used.

**International Line Voltages 200 - 240 Volts**

This product has been designed for use with certified IEC 320- C13 10A/250V - H03 VV-F3G 1.00mm² type line cord.

International product orders are supplied with a certified 10A/250V line cords, utilizing a molded 3-pin IEC 320-C13 type connector at one end and stripped conductors on the other. One line cord is provided. Conductors are CEE color coded; blue (neutral), brown (line), and green/yellow (ground).

Installation by a qualified electrician, of an appropriately approved A/C wall plug certified for the country of use, is required.

Alternatively, other IEC 320 C-13 type power cords may be used, provided that they meet the necessary safety certification requirements for the country in which they are to be used. Refer to the correctly specified line cord above.

**EMC Notices**

**United States of America**

**FCC Part 15**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class A Digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

**Notice**

Changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by Ross Video Limited could void the user’s authority to operate this equipment.

**CANADA**

This Class “A” digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe “A” est conforme a la norme NMB-003 du Canada.
**EUROPE**

This equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of CE Directive 93/68/EEC.

**INTERNATIONAL**

This equipment has been tested to **CISPR 22:1997** along with amendments **A1:2000** and **A2:2002**, and found to comply with the limits for a Class A Digital device.

⚠️ **Notice**

This is a Class A product. In domestic environments, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may have to take adequate measures.

**General Handling Guidelines**

- Careful handling, using proper ESD precautions, must be observed.
- Power down the system before PCB removal.

**A Word About Static Discharge**

Throughout the many procedures in this *Operator’s Manual*, please observe all static discharge precautions.

⚠️ **Notice**

Avoid handling the switcher circuit boards in high static environments such as carpeted areas, and when synthetic fiber clothing is worn. Touch the frame to dissipate static charge before removing boards from the frame, and exercise proper grounding precautions when working on circuit boards.
Ross Video Limited (Ross) warrants its switchers and related options, to be free from defects under normal use and service for a period of THREE YEARS from the date of shipment. Fader handle assemblies are warranted for the life of the product. If an item becomes defective within the warranty period Ross will repair or replace the defective item, as determined solely by Ross.

Warranty repairs will be conducted at Ross, with all shipping FOB Ross dock. If repairs are conducted at the customer site, reasonable out-of-pocket charges will apply. At the discretion of Ross, and on a temporary loan basis, plug in circuit boards or other replacement parts may be supplied free of charge while defective items undergo repair. Return packing, shipping, and special handling costs are the responsibility of the customer.

Software upgrades for switchers, as defined by Ross, may occur from time to time. Ross will notify customers of such upgrades and, subject to a customer-initiated request, such upgrades will be provided free of charge within three years of the original ship date, with shipping FOB Ross dock.

This warranty is void if products are subjected to misuse, neglect, accident, improper installation or application, or unauthorized modification.

In no event shall Ross Video Limited be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages (including loss of profit). Implied warranties, including that of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, are expressly limited to the duration of this warranty.

This warranty is TRANSFERABLE to subsequent owners, subject to Ross’ notification of change of ownership.
Environmental Information

The equipment that you purchased required the extraction and use of natural resources for its production. It may contain hazardous substances that could impact health and the environment.

To avoid the potential release of those substances into the environment and to diminish the need for the extraction of natural resources, Ross Video encourages you to use the appropriate take-back systems. These systems will reuse or recycle most of the materials from your end-of-life equipment in an environmentally friendly and health conscious manner.

The crossed-out wheeled bin symbol invites you to use these systems.

If you need more information on the collection, reuse, and recycling systems, please contact your local or regional waste administration.

You can also contact Ross Video for more information on the environmental performances of our products.
# Company Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ross Video Limited</th>
<th>Ross Video Incorporated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8 John Street</td>
<td>P.O. Box 880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iroquois, Ontario, K0E 1K0</td>
<td>Ogdensburg, New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>USA 13669-0880</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General Business Office</td>
<td>(+1) 613 • 652 • 4886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fax</td>
<td>(+1) 613 • 652 • 4425</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Technical Support</td>
<td>(+1) 613 • 652 • 4886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After hours emergency</td>
<td>(+1) 613 • 349 • 0006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E-mail (Technical Support):</td>
<td><a href="mailto:techsupport@rossvideo.com">techsupport@rossvideo.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-mail (General Information):</td>
<td><a href="mailto:solutions@rossvideo.com">solutions@rossvideo.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Website</td>
<td><a href="http://www.rossvideo.com">http://www.rossvideo.com</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On-Air Indicators ................................................................................................ 4-11
Knobs .................................................................................................................. 4-12
Fade to Black ................................................................................................................. .... 4-13
Performing a Fade to Black ............................................................................. 4-13
Resetting the Switcher ............................................................................................... 4-15
Software Reset .................................................................................................... 4-15
Full Restart .......................................................................................................... 4-16
Shutting Down the Switcher ............................................................................................ 4-17

Transitions 5

In This Chapter ............................................................................................................... 5-1
Transition Control Group ............................................................................................ 5-2
Transition Control Group Overview ..................................................................... 5-2
Working with Next Transitions .............................................................................. 5-5
Example Transitions ............................................................................................. 5-5
Performing Transitions ............................................................................................ 5-8
Eight Steps to a Flawless Transition ........................................................................ 5-8
Performing Auto Transitions ................................................................................ 5-8
Performing Manual Transitions ........................................................................... 5-10
Performing Cuts .................................................................................................. 5-10
Performing Dissolves .......................................................................................... 5-11
Performing a Transition Limit Effect .................................................................... 5-12
Performing a Transition Preview .......................................................................... 5-13
Performing a Preset Black Transition .................................................................. 5-14

Pattern and Effects Control 6

In This Chapter ............................................................................................................... 6-1
Effects Control Groups ............................................................................................ 6-2
Effects Control Modes .......................................................................................... 6-2
Wipes ......................................................................................................................... .......... 6-4
Using Wipes ................................................................................................................... ..... 6-6
Selecting Wipes .................................................................................................... 6-7
Mattes Group .................................................................................................................. ... 6-10

Keying 7

In This Chapter ............................................................................................................... 7-1
Introduction to Keying ............................................................................................ 7-2
Key Group Basics ............................................................................................... 7-2
Effects Keyers Group ............................................................................................ 7-2
Downstream Keyer Group .................................................................................... 7-5
A Word About FlexiClean .................................................................................... 7-8
Using Keys .................................................................................................................... ...... 7-9
Performing a Self Key .......................................................................................... 7-9
Performing an Auto Select Key .......................................................................... 7-10
Performing a Preset Pattern Key ........................................................................ 7-11
UltraChrome Chroma Keys .................................................................................... 7-13
Choosing an UltraChrome Operating Mode ....................................................... 7-13
Performing an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode .................................. 7-14
Performing an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode .......................... 7-19
Chroma Key Lighting Tips ................................................................................... 7-30
Key Modifiers ........................................................................................................... 8

Memory and Disk Functions ...................................................................................... 9

Peripheral Control and More .................................................................................... 10
Global-Store .................................................................................................................. 11-9
Global-Store Menu Tree .......................................................................................... 11-9
Selecting a Still for a Global-Store Channel ............................................................... 11-10
Renaming a Still ........................................................................................................ 11-11
Cancelling a Still from a Global-Store Channel ......................................................... 11-12
Managing Stills and Directories .............................................................................. 11-13
On Air Properties ..................................................................................................... 11-17
Default Stills ........................................................................................................... 11-23
Capturing Stills ....................................................................................................... 11-25
Restarting the Global-Store ...................................................................................... 11-26

Squeeze & Tease MD Basic Operation ...................................................................... 12
In This Chapter ......................................................................................................... 12-1
Operational Overview .............................................................................................. 12-2
Working in 3D Space ............................................................................................... 12-3
    Channel Location in 3D Space ........................................................................ 12-3
    Position Coordinates ....................................................................................... 12-3
    Screen and Channel Location ........................................................................ 12-4
    Perspective ........................................................................................................ 12-5
    Channel Rotation ............................................................................................ 12-7
    Channel Centering ......................................................................................... 12-8
Control Options ....................................................................................................... 12-9
Conclusion ................................................................................................................ 12-9
Using the Positioner ................................................................................................. 12-10
Using the Mattes Color Knobs ................................................................................ 12-11
Squeeze & Tease Menu System ................................................................................ 12-12
    Through the Main Menu .................................................................................. 12-12
    Hide Menus ..................................................................................................... 12-12
Squeeze & Tease MD Menu Tree ............................................................................. 12-15
3D Guidelines .......................................................................................................... 12-15
    Fly Key Rules .................................................................................................. 12-16
    Using Two Channels in Different Keys ............................................................ 12-17
Channel Listing ....................................................................................................... 12-18
    Channel Status ............................................................................................... 12-18
    Channels .......................................................................................................... 12-19
Active Keyer ............................................................................................................ 12-19
Working with Channels ............................................................................................ 12-20
    Assigning Multiple Channels to a Flying Key .................................................. 12-20
Channel Management ............................................................................................... 12-21
    Navigating to the Channel Management Menu ................................................ 12-21
    Channel Selection ........................................................................................... 12-21
Position/Crop Functions

In This Chapter .................................................................13-1
Position/Crop Menu ..........................................................13-2
Channel Position ...............................................................13-3
Channel Pivot Location .........................................................13-5
  Pivot Preset ......................................................................13-5
  Pivot Position .................................................................13-6
Channel Rotation ...............................................................13-7
Channel Aspect Ratio .........................................................13-8
Cropping ...........................................................................13-9
  Crop Horizontal ...............................................................13-9
  Crop Vertical ....................................................................13-10
Transparency .....................................................................13-11
Freeze ...............................................................................13-12

Advanced Positioning

In This Chapter .................................................................14-1
Advanced Positioning Menu ................................................14-2
Spin ..................................................................................14-3
Viewpoint ..........................................................................14-4
Locate ...............................................................................14-5

Borders

In This Chapter .................................................................15-1
Picture Frame Borders Menu ................................................15-2
Border Size .........................................................................15-3
Border Appearance ............................................................15-4
  Border Softness ...............................................................15-4
  Border Symmetry .............................................................15-5
  Border Transparency .......................................................15-6
Border Texture and Corners ................................................15-8
  Border Texture Styles .......................................................15-8
  Border Corners ...............................................................15-8
Border Color .......................................................................15-10
  Adjusting the Border Color ..............................................15-10
Working with Multiple Channels .........................................15-12

Preprocessor Effects

In This Chapter .................................................................16-1
Preprocessor Effects Menu ................................................16-2
Defocus Effect ....................................................................16-3
Mosaic Effect ......................................................................16-4
Squeeze & Tease MD Sequences and Wipes 17

In This Chapter ................................................................. 17-1
Introduction to Sequences .................................................. 17-2
Understanding Sequences .................................................. 17-2
Keyframe Transitions ....................................................... 17-3
Using the Sequence Menus ................................................... 17-4
Navigating to the Sequence Menus ...................................... 17-4
Overview of the Sequence Menus ....................................... 17-4
Creating a Sequence .......................................................... 17-6
Creating a Four Keyframe Sequence ...................................... 17-6
Modifying Spline Motion .................................................... 17-10
Spline Motion Overview .................................................. 17-10
Adjusting Tension, Bias, and Continuity ............................ 17-12
Modifying the Keyframes of a Sequence .............................. 17-14
Modifying Multiple Keyframes in a Sequence ...................... 17-14
Overwriting a Keyframe .................................................... 17-17
Adding a Hold to a Sequence ............................................. 17-18
Adding a Hold to a Sequence ............................................. 17-18
Working with Sequences .................................................... 17-20
Loading a Sequence ......................................................... 17-20
Renaming a Sequence ....................................................... 17-21
Deleting a Sequence ........................................................ 17-22
Previewing a Sequence ..................................................... 17-22
Sequence Memory Notes .................................................. 17-22
Running a Sequence .......................................................... 17-23
Running a Sequence at the Default Rate ............................. 17-23
Running a Sequence at a Specific Rate .............................. 17-24
Running a Sequence with a Hold ....................................... 17-25
Using the Pattern Control Buttons ....................................... 17-26
Programming Pattern Control Buttons .............................. 17-26
Introduction to Squeeze & Tease Wipes .............................. 17-27
Understanding Squeeze & Tease MD Wipes ....................... 17-27
Creating a Squeeze & Tease Wipe ...................................... 17-29
Creating a Squeeze & Tease Wipe ...................................... 17-29
Loading a Squeeze & Tease Wipe ...................................... 17-31
Running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe ....................................... 17-32
Running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe ....................................... 17-32
Storing Sequences and Wipes ............................................ 17-33
Storing Squeeze & Tease Sequences .................................... 17-33
Storing Individual Squeeze & Tease Sequences ................... 17-34
Recalling Sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes ............... 17-37
Recalling an Entire Set of Sequences ................................. 17-37
Recalling a Specific Squeeze & Tease Wipe ....................... 17-38
Lighting 18
In This Chapter ................................................................. 18-1
Using the Lighting Menus .......................................................... 18-2
Lighting Setup .............................................................................. 18-3
   Lighting Model ................................................................. 18-3
   Position ............................................................................. 18-4
   Presets ........................................................................... 18-4
   Auto Follow ................................................................. 18-6
   Luminance Clipping ..................................................... 18-6
Working with Multiple Channels ........................................ 18-8

WARP Effects 19
In This Chapter ........................................................................... 19-1
Selecting and Working with WARP Effects ........................................ 19-2
WARP Resources ........................................................................ 19-3
WARP Effects ............................................................................ 19-5
   Film .................................................................................. 19-5
   Globe ................................................................................ 19-8
   Heart ............................................................................... 19-11
   Lens Flare ......................................................................... 19-14
   Melt ............................................................................... 19-17
   Obscure .......................................................................... 19-19
   Page Roll ......................................................................... 19-22
   Pixie Dust ....................................................................... 19-23
   Ripple ............................................................................... 19-25
   Sand ............................................................................... 19-27
   Split ............................................................................... 19-29
   Star ............................................................................... 19-31
   Stretch ............................................................................ 19-34

Appendix A. Menu Trees 20
In This Appendix ........................................................................ 20-1
Effects Menu Tree .................................................................... 20-2
Options Menu Tree .................................................................... 20-3
BNC Configuration Menu Tree .................................................. 20-4
Output BNC Configuration Menu Tree ........................................ 20-5
Personality Menu Tree ............................................................... 20-6
GPI Setup Menu Tree ................................................................. 20-7
Editor Communication Menu Tree ............................................ 20-8
Audio Communication Menu Tree ............................................. 20-9
Serial Tally Communication Menu Tree ...................................... 20-10
Disk Menu Tree ...................................................................... 20-11
Global-Store Menu Tree ............................................................ 20-12
Squeeze & Tease MD Menu Tree ................................................ 20-13
Help Menu Tree ....................................................................... 20-14

Appendix B. Synergy Effects 21
In This Appendix ........................................................................ 21-1
Squeeze & Tease MD Wipes and Sequences .................................. 21-2
Appendix C. Hotkeys

In This Appendix .............................................................................................................. 22-1
Overview ...................................................................................................................... 22-2
    Hotkey Labels ....................................................................................................... 22-2
Using Hotkeys ................................................................................................................. 22-3
    Using Hotkeys .................................................................................................... 22-3
Hotkey Functions .............................................................................................................. 22-4
    Channel Selection Hotkeys ................................................................................. 22-4
    Menu Hotkeys ................................................................................................. 22-4
    Sequences Hotkeys ............................................................................................. 22-5

Glossary of Terms

Index

GL

IX
Introduction

A Word of Thanks

Congratulations on choosing the Ross Synergy 100 MD Live Production Engine. You have purchased the power and versatility of an advanced Multi-Level Effects (MLE®) digital switcher that is ready to take on all creative challenges in today’s competitive broadcast environment. You will be pleased at how easily your Synergy 100 MD switcher fits into your working environment.
About This Manual

This manual covers the operation of the Synergy 100 MD switcher. The following chapters are included:

- **The Front Matter** of this manual includes information on the warranty and repair policy, and all regulatory and safety notices and compliance issues.
- Chapter 1, “Introduction” summarizes the manual and describes the components and features that comprise the switcher system.
- Chapter 2, “Control Panel Introduction” provides an overview of the Synergy 100 MD control panel. You will learn the various panel sections and details about basic functionality.
- Chapter 3, “Using the Menu System” provides an introduction to the menu system of the Synergy 100 MD switcher.
- Chapter 4, “Switcher Basics” presents basic operating rules and procedures regarding crosspoints, buses, knobs, and Fade to Black.
- Chapter 5, “Transitions” outlines operating procedures for manual transitions, cuts, dissolves, auto transitions, and a variety of other basic transition modes.
- Chapter 6, “Pattern and Effects Control” provides information and instructions for using the pattern generators and Effects Control groups of the switcher.
- Chapter 7, “Keying” provides instructions for using the Effects Keyers and Downstream Keyer of the Synergy 100 MD switcher.
- Chapter 8, “Key Modifiers” provides instructions for using all the various key modifiers, such as mattes, masks, and key invert.
- Chapter 9, “Memory and Disk Functions” provides instructions for using the Memory System and the Disk Store and Recall functions.
- Chapter 10, “Peripheral Control and More” provides instructions for using features such as GPIs, copy and swap functions, Remote Aux Panels, the Preview Overlay, and Editor Interface of the Synergy 100 MD switcher.
- Chapter 11, “Global-Store” provides instructions for transferring images to and from your switcher’s hard drive using a WebDAV connection, and how to use these images in Global-Store.
- Chapter 12, “Squeeze & Tease Basic Operation” provides a basic introduction to the operation of the Squeeze & Tease MD option.
- Chapter 13, “Position/Crop Functions” provides instructions for Flying a DVE Key using the Squeeze & Tease MD option.
- Chapter 14, “Advanced Positioning” provides instructions for using the advanced positioning features of the Squeeze & Tease MD option.
- Chapter 15, “Borders” provides information for applying borders to your Squeeze & Tease DVE Keys.
- Chapter 16, “Preprocessor Effects” provides instructions for adding effects to Squeeze & Tease Keys.
- Chapter 17, “Squeeze & Tease MD Sequences and Wipes” provides detailed instructions for using the Squeeze & Tease MD Sequences and Wipes.
• Chapter 18, “Lighting” provides instructions for adding lighting effects to keys in Squeeze & Tease.

• Chapter 19, “WARP Effects” provides detailed instructions for applying WARP effects to keys.

• Appendix A, “Menu Trees” lists the various menu trees that are used within the Synergy 100 MD switcher.

• Appendix B, “Synergy Effects” briefly describes the pre-programmed wipes that are supplied when you purchase the Squeeze & Tease MD option.

• Appendix C, “Hotkeys” provides information on the system of hotkeys, or shortcut keys, on the Synergy 100 control panel.

• The Glossary provides a reference list of important switching and video terms used throughout this manual.

• An Index is also provided for your reference.

If, at any time, you have a question pertaining to the operation of your Ross Synergy 100 MD switcher, please contact us at the numbers listed in the front of this manual. Our technical staff is always available for consultation, training, or service.
Documentation Conventions

The following conventions are used throughout this manual:

- Rear panel connectors are indicated in bold-faced upper case letters. For example:

  The **AUX 1** connector is…

- Control Panel buttons are indicated in bold-faced upper case letters, using a sans-serif font. For example:

  Press **WIPE** to…

- Menu names on the preview overlay and switcher control panel areas are indicated in bold-faced text. For example:

  The **Inputs Menu** allows you to …

  The **Downstream Keyer** Group consists of …

- The “**Operating Tips**” table and “**Note**” table are used throughout this manual to provide customers with additional useful information. For example:

  | Operating Tip | As you switch between Key 1, Key 2, and the DSKs, the crosspoint buttons will indicate which sources are selected for that key. If you change a source, this will not affect the other selections. |
  | Note | Fade to Black only affects the program output of the switcher. Aux Bus outputs or Clean Feed outputs will not be affected by Fade to Black. |

- Asterisks (*) in Synergy 100 MD menu trees denote levels of association. For example, all items marked with two asterisks (**) are grouped together, all items marked with three asterisks (***) are grouped together, and so on.
Documentation Terms

The following terms are used throughout this manual:

- “Switcher” refers to the entire Synergy 100 MD Live Production Engine, consisting of its electronics frame and control panel.
- “Frame” and “Electronics Frame” both refer to the electronics chassis of Synergy 100 MD Live Production Engine.
- “Operator” and “User” refer to the person who uses the Synergy 100 MD Live Production Engine.
- “Control Panel” both refer to the large multi-button control panel of the Synergy 100 MD Live Production Engine.
- “SDI” refers to Serial Digital Video, a digital video signal that is distributed via a single coaxial cable with BNC connectors.
- “HD-SDI” refers to High Definition Serial Digital Interface video, a component digital video signal that is distributed via a single coaxial cable with BNC connectors.
- “Video System” refers to the mix of interconnected digital equipment (including the edit controller, VTRs, DVEs, etc.) in which the Synergy 100 MD Live Production Engine is included.
- “DVE” refers to an internal or external Digital Video Effects device that uses digital signal processing to create two or three dimensional wipe effects.
- “Storage device” refers to the hardware used to save and recall setups, configurations and registers of the Synergy 100 MD Live Production Engine. Examples of storage devices are the internal hard drive and a USB Drive.
# Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used throughout the text:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A-D</td>
<td>Analog-to-Digital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX</td>
<td>Auxiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BKGD</td>
<td>Background Transition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CG</td>
<td>Character Generator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-A</td>
<td>Digital-to-Analog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA</td>
<td>Distribution Amplifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDR</td>
<td>Digital Disk Recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDR (SDRAM)</td>
<td>Double Data Rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSK</td>
<td>Downstream Keyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVE</td>
<td>Digital Video Effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVR</td>
<td>Digital Video Recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD</td>
<td>High Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD</td>
<td>Multi-definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLE</td>
<td>Multi-level Effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGM</td>
<td>Program Bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>Preset Bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST PATT</td>
<td>Preset Pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PV</td>
<td>Preview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RU</td>
<td>Rack Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>Standard Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TD</td>
<td>Technical Director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCR</td>
<td>Video Cassette Recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDCP</td>
<td>Video Disk Communications Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTR</td>
<td>Video Tape Recorder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Related Publications

All Synergy 100 MD switchers come with a complete set of system documentation that includes an Operator’s Manual and an Engineering Manual.

For a complete overview of the physical installation and system configuration of the Synergy 100 MD switcher, refer to the following publication:

- *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual*, Ross Part Number: 4400DR-101
Product Overview

Ross Video developed the Synergy 100 MD series for live news, live sports and live production. Because the switcher is the center of the action, it must be powerful and versatile, yet easy to operate. This operational simplicity frees operators to concentrate on the content — instead of the equipment.

The Synergy 100 MD series (our fifth generation of switchers) was designed with the direct input of video professionals experienced in news, sports, and mobile production. Key members of the Synergy 100 MD design team are part of an ongoing program where they demonstrate the product, assist with installations and provide operator training. As a result, the Synergy 100 MD line continues to advance Ross Video’s traditions — power, ease of use and logical panel layouts.

Product Highlights

The following list summarizes the key features of the Synergy 100 MD:

- **Fully Digital System** — All switchers in the series are fully digital. This unique concept simplifies the design, minimizes the power requirements, and reduces the overall cost. By requiring all A-D and D-A conversion to be performed outside the system, digital noise stays out of the converters. In addition, customers are guaranteed the latest converter technology, without burdening the cost of the switcher, and with the added option to use those converters for other purposes — as they gradually convert to the digital domain.

- **Multi-Definition** — The Synergy 100 MD switcher allows you to work in either Standard Definition or High Definition, supporting 480i (SD 525), 576i (SD 625), 720p, 1080i, 1080p, and 1080pSF video formats.

- **Input Matrix** — The Synergy 100 MD comes standard with 16 multi-definition video inputs.

- **Stunning Styling in 4 Color Choices** — The Synergy 100 MD is sure to impress with sleek lines, subtle design accents, and colors to match your installation. Classic Black, Tech Silver, Sport Yellow, and Cool White – the choice is yours, but it won’t be easy!

- **Powerful Compact MD Chassis** — The Synergy 100 MD multi-definition frame sets a new standard for small compact chassis capability. The Synergy 100 MD frame has the potential for 2.5 MLEs (2 Keyers and 1 DSK), 32 Multi-Definition Inputs, 16 Multi-Definition Configurable Outputs, 8 DVE Channels, 13 Internal Keyers, 11 Internal Ethernet-connected Media Stores, and 13 Classes of External Interfaces. Add Proc Amps, RGB Color Correctors, Utility Buses, FlexiClean™, Preview Overlay, Linux OS, and a whole lot more, and the result is nothing short of revolutionary.

- **Preview Overlay** — This powerful feature provides an intuitive way to set up the extended functions of the Synergy 100 MD. A graphical overlay on the switcher preview provides plain English set up and programming menus.

- **Ethernet Connectivity** — Upgrades can be done from a computer using an Ethernet port on the back of the frame. Images and animations can be copied from a computer to the switcher’s internal hard drive for use by the Global-Store and MediaCache. The Ethernet port can also be used to transfer images and animations from the hard drive on the switcher to a computer. This allows images captures on the switcher to be used elsewhere in the studio.
• **DSKs** — The Synergy 100 MD has one standard Downstream Keyer. With the MultiDSK™ option installed, two additional Downstream Keyers are added. The DSK has full access to all 16 inputs.

• **Squeeze & Tease® MD** — Squeeze & Tease MD is a high quality, powerful multi-definition 3D DVE option. Great for sophisticated looking boxes, it allows every type of key to be squeezed or zoomed, cropped, repositioned, and rotated in 3D space. It can also perform 3D key or background transitions, or build sequences with complex timelines, keyframe editing, and quick “shot box” sequence recall. Squeeze & Tease MD comes equipped with a positionable light source, preprocessor effects such as defocus, mosaic, posterization, colorization, strobe, picture frame borders, object builder for slabs, timeline sequences with holds, and a lot more. Up to 4 channels of Squeeze & Tease MD can be added to the Synergy 100 MD.

• **Squeeze & Tease® MD WARP** — Stunning curvilinear transitions and creative effects are possible when this option, which provides warp capability to Squeeze & Tease MD, is added. Over 20 classes of modifiable WARP effects are included such as page turns, spheres, ripples, 3D hearts, stars, sandstorm, old film effects, and more.

• **UltraChrome™ Advanced Chroma Keying** — Our UltraChrome chroma keyer uses new Ross technology to perform detailed keying in the most demanding applications. The UltraChrome chroma keyer is a standard feature of the Synergy 100 MD.

• **3 Channel Global-Store™** — Three independent channels of stills are available. Thousands of stills and logos can be stored in the on-board hard drive and are transferable to other control-room devices via Ethernet using a WebDAV connection.

• **Powerful MLE** — Synergy 100 MD packs major effects and keying power into this small, versatile switcher. It has two fully featured keyers with luma, linear, preset pattern, and an advanced UltraChrome chroma keyer. Two advanced pattern generators include rotary wipes, matrix wipes, heart, and star.

• **Serial Tally Interface** — Interfacing to Under Monitor Display and Tally Systems is easy with this option. The Serial Tally Interface uses industry standard tally protocols to communicate tally information on an RS-422 serial port to other devices.

• **Small Audio Mixer Interface** — This powerful option is available for those who wish to control an audio mixer from the Synergy 100 MD panel, making an integrated A/V production possible.

• **Compatible with Synergy SD Panels** — The Synergy 100 MD frame connects to the same control panels as the economical Synergy SD frame.

• **Compatible with the Synergy MD-X Compact Rack Frame** — With the exception of the Input with Crosspoint board, all other boards used in the 3RU Synergy 100 MD compact rack frame also plug into the Synergy MD-X 8 RU rack frame. This allows for consistent operation, maintenance, and spare parts across the entire product line.

• **Hot Swappable Boards** — All boards in the Synergy 100 MD frame can be safely removed with the power on. If any card is plugged into the wrong slot, the board and system hardware will not be damaged. In addition, Synergy 100 MD was designed to support emergency swapping of some circuit boards even during live operation.

• **GVG Compatibility** — Those who grew up on the GVG 100 or 110 will find this powerful switcher astonishingly simple to learn. Not only will your hands fall right into place, the switcher drops right into the original GVG desk cutout and consumes the same 3RU as the original frame.

• **Remote Aux Bus Panels** — Up to 8 Remote Aux Panels can be added to the Synergy 100 MD.
• **Growth Path** — The same video-processing frame is used for our Synergy MD 100, 1, 1.5, 2, and 2.5 MLE switchers. Buy a smaller system now and then add another MLE and a larger control panel as your needs grow.

• **Free Upgrades from the Web** — Software and even some hardware can be upgraded by downloading files from our web site.

• **Built to Last** — Ross Video warranties save thousands in operational costs over competitive products. It’s no secret that Ross products are tough. They’re built to handle years of demanding, continuous use. The Synergy 100 MD is backed by a comprehensive 3-year transferable warranty. The design of our fourth generation fader bars is so good that they are guaranteed for life.

### Standard Features

The following features are standard in the Synergy 100 MD switcher:

**Complete Control Panel**

Regardless of what options are ordered, you will always receive a control panel with every button, knob, display, and light installed. This means that your Synergy 100 MD and your control room will look their very best - even if your budget is tight.

**16 Multi-Definition Serial Digital Inputs**

The Synergy 100 MD switcher comes standard with 16 serial digital inputs. Any input can be assigned to any of the 10 control panel pushbuttons - simplifying installation. In the event that the user would like the ability to access any of the 16 sources, one of the source buttons can be assigned as a “shift” button which, when held, shifts that row of sources to a second bank. Any of the inputs can be used for video or alpha channels.

**16 Multi-Definition Timed Digital Outputs**

In the Synergy 100 MD, every output is configurable. Output mapping will vary greatly from one installation to another depending upon local requirements, and whether MultiDSK is installed and enabled.

The following signals are available from the crosspoint matrix to the output cards in a standard system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crosspoint Matrix Video Signal</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Primary Inputs</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global-Store</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preview</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** If the MultiDSK option is enabled, BNCs B01 to B06 are locked and cannot be reconfigured. B07 defaults to Preview with Overlay.
Every output is fully timed to provide consistent and adjustable output phasing.

**Analog Reference Input**

All Synergy 100 MD switchers use an analog reference that consists of a pair of looping reference BNC connectors, in addition to the standard 16 inputs, on the rear panel of the Video Input Board. Tri-level sync is recommended for HD applications. The same looping connector will accept standard color black as a reference in SD applications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crosspoint Matrix Video Signal</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FlexiClean Clean Feed</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preview Overlay</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSK 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total sources available</strong></td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

If the reference loop is not used, it is recommended that the loopback BNC be terminated.

**3 Channel Global-Store**

Three independent channels of stills are available switcher-wide. Thousands of full screen stills and logos can be stored in the on-board hard drive and are transferable to other control-room devices via Ethernet using a WebDAV connection, which also comes standard with the Synergy 100 MD.

Global-Store comes standard with 256 Megabytes of RAM storage. This translates to at least 30 full screen 1080i images with key or 189 full screen 480i images with key. The number of images stored increase considerably when smaller, non-full screen images like logos are stored. Thousands of additional images can be loaded from the system hard drive.

**One Full Multi-Definition MLE Effects System**

Standard equipment on the Synergy 100 MD includes one full MLE (Multi-Level Effect) system. Two wipe generators come standard. The two Effects Keyers can matte fill, key invert, mask, Self Key, Linear Key, and Preset Pattern Key. A “floating” UltraChrome advanced Chroma Keyer is standard. The MLE also features five matte generators. Full preview is always available to reduce on-air surprises.

**Copy and Swap Functions**

The following convenient copy and swap functions are available as standard:

- **Copy Key** – allows you to copy the contents of one keyer to another keyer.
- **Swap Key** – allows you to swap the contents of one keyer with another keyer.

**Two Pattern Generators**

The Synergy 100 MD includes (as standard) two full functionality pattern generators equipped with extensive traditional, rotary, and matrix wipes, as well as preset pattern keys.

**Keyer Configuration**

The Synergy 100 MD comes equipped with 3 keyers – two Effects Keyers and a Downstream Keyer.
**UltraChrome Advanced Chroma Keyer**

The Effects Keyer comes equipped with a “floating” UltraChrome high quality chroma keyer produced by Ross.

The Ross UltraChrome™ (patent pending) uses advanced video processing technology to provide exceptional blue spill reduction and clean edges, even with difficult source material. Glass, smoke, translucent materials, and natural shadows are handled superbly. Setup is a breeze with single-touch auto chroma keying and intuitive touch-up controls. Chroma key shadows can either be extracted from the source image or simulated using the switcher’s optional border generators.

**FlexiClean™ MLE Clean Feed Output**

This feature is used for bilingual and live-to-tape productions. It provides a second “program” output that is derived from a different location than the standard program output. A frequent application is the recording of shows for later airing without “call in” phone numbers inserted.

The clean feed can come from before or between the Keyers. The diagram below illustrates the possible clean feed configurations with the MultiDSK™ (DSK 4 and DSK 5) installed.

![Clean Feed Modes in MultiDSK](image)

**Effects Functions (Preview Overlay)**

The Effects function makes it possible to present various types of useful information on the two preview outputs. The overlay can be displayed according to user preferences. A variety of overlay information is available:

- The “Safe Title and Safe Action Area” overlay places a SMPTE standard safe title or safe action area indication over the switcher’s main preview output.
  - Safe title is a box that outlines the area within which the vast majority of home TV sets will be able to read text.
  - Safe action area is a box that outlines the region within which viewers should be able to follow the action on the screen.
- The “Center Cross Hairs” overlay places cross hairs on the preview output to indicate the center of the picture. It is useful in the alignment of text and other information.

**Powerful and Intuitive Control Panel**

The Synergy 100 MD is packed with features that make it easy and enjoyable to put together a great production. Here’s a quick list of product highlights:

- **Transition Preview** — This allows you to rehearse your next transition using a wipe or dissolve on the preview monitor before using it on air. A Ross Patent.
- **3 Axis Joystick** — This is the same high quality joystick used on all our switchers. Not only does this provide an intuitive and precise control over Squeeze & Tease MD and
MD WARP, but it’s also, great for positioning and sizing borders, masks, preset patterns, and more.

- **PST BLACK Button** — This button, previously only found on large production switchers, makes a quick dip to black, followed by the next preset transition, a snap.

- **Protected Fade to Black Button** — Operators frequently push buttons without looking at the panel – they’re too busy watching the action on the monitors. One button they really want to have a different feel is the **Fade to Black** button. To help them out, we put special ridges around it.

- **Trans Limit Button** — Another large switcher feature, this memorizes a mid transition hold for wipes and dissolves. When activated, the appropriate segment on the transition progress bar beside the fader will flash to show exactly where in the transition the hold will occur.

- **DVE Button** — Access to internally generated Squeeze & Tease MD and MD WARP wipes couldn’t be easier. Access DVE transitions just like a wipe – press DVE, then a pattern button.

- **User Wipes** — When the next transition is a Wipe or DVE effect, double press one of the 10 pattern buttons to recall any of 10 user wipes or DVE effects, custom selected from more than a hundred possible effects.

- **Key Mem Button** — This ensures that your linear keys are always calibrated exactly as they were designed to look. If you want to “tweak” the clip and gain, turn Key Mem off to get a custom look.

- **Char Gen 1 and Char Gen 2 Buttons** — These are your customized CG hotkeys. Press either one and the DSK defaults its settings and selects the Character Generator of your choice.

- **Source Holds on Memory Recalls** — If you hold down a source button when you perform a memory recall, the memory comes back, but the background doesn’t change. This is a great live feature that lets you switch a sophisticated and unpredictable production on the fly.

- **Auto DSK Drop** — The Synergy 100 MD can help you do two things at once when switching a fast paced show! When you take a new background directly to air on the background bus, the DSK can be programmed to automatically cut off at the same time.

- **Memory “Effects Dissolves”** — Memory recalls can be set to recall instantly, or to smoothly move all parameters from the current settings to the stored settings. This feature can be used to build custom 3D WARP effects with each memory location used to store a keyframe. For example, it’s great for flipping WARP over-the-shoulder boxes forward to full screen!

- **Pop Up Help** — Don’t you hate it when you press a button, nothing happens, and you don’t have any idea why? We do too. On the Synergy 100 MD, a short help message pops up on the preview monitor to help you out when you have pushed an invalid sequence of buttons.

- **Tri-Color Buttons** — On air sources light red, other buttons light yellow, and buttons that currently apply to the joystick and Effects Control region light green. Easy to use, easy to learn, looks great.

- **Alphanumeric Displays** — There are three assignable regions in the upper panel – Effects Control, Mattes, and System Control. Dedicated alphanumeric displays keep you well informed as to how they’re assigned.
• **Non-Sync Indicators** — These are great for system timing and advance warning of potential problems with a source. The bus names to the left of the source buttons glow green when everything’s okay and yellow when a source is non-sync.

• **Shared Key Bus Indicators** — The Key Bus source buttons can be shared three ways – Key 1 sources, Key 2 sources, and DSK sources. Each keyer has its own independent bus. Illuminated labels to the left of the bus keep you fully informed.

• **Variable Button and Display Brightness** — Not all control rooms have identical lighting. The Synergy 100 MD buttons and displays can be custom set in the installation menus to just the right brightness level.

• **Built-in Panel Diagnostics** — The Synergy 100 MD panel comes complete with an easy to use suite of diagnostic tests. These are the same ones that we use to test it in our factory.

### 100 Event Memory System

The Synergy 100 MD is equipped with a standard 100-event memory registers for complete switcher snapshots. At the touch of a button, the entire switcher setup can be recalled using the numbered buttons in the **Effects Control Group**, or the 10 and 1 buttons (in conjunction with the SEL button) in the **System Control Group**.

All of these memories, including associated attributes, can be stored to the hard disk or a USB Drive, providing custom tailored memories for every operator and every show.

### Effects Dissolves

All Synergy 100 MD memories can also be used as effects dissolves. This allows you to easily produce elaborate moving effects at the touch of a button – especially powerful with the Squeeze & Tease MD and MD WARP options.

### 5 Matte Generators

The Synergy 100 MD has five simple color generators for wipes, Effects Keyers 1 and 2, COLOR BKGD, and DSK key border. Two additional matte generators are added when you purchase Squeeze & Tease MD and/or MD WARP. These color generators allow you to adjust the hue, color saturation, and luminance of the BKGD, wipe pattern borders, Effects key fill, or the Downstream key border and matte fill.

### Hard Disk Drive and USB Drive

Up to 100 switcher setups, including memory functions, switcher personalities, and installation parameters, can be stored to and recalled from the System Hard Drive or a USB Drive. This allows operators and technical staff to easily backup their switcher setups.

The system hard disk drive is located on the CPU Board in the Synergy 100 MD frame. Switcher settings can also be stored here for quick recall. This is the same hard disk drive that is used to store stills, logos, animated logos, and short video clips. Memories and graphics files are accessible over the 10/100 Ethernet network port for easy remote load and backup.

### Switcher Setup Menus

Press the **MENU** button to bring up the setup and programming menus. These are presented in plain English and are designed for quick navigation. The menu can be over a blue background or transparent, showing the preview video behind it – this feature is user selectable.
Displays and Indicators

The Synergy 100 switcher always keeps you informed.

- **PGM** bus crosspoints are illuminated red, signifying “on-air” status, except when the panel is faded to black. In this case, the crosspoint LEDs will be orange.
- **PST** bus crosspoints are lit orange, except during a background transition, when they will be red.
- **KEY** bus crosspoints will be lit orange when the key is not on air, and red when the key is contributing to the program output.
- The secret-till-lit LEDs to the left of each crosspoint bus will be lit green when the source selected on the bus is synchronous, and orange if the source is non-synchronous.
- Functions that have control of the Effects Control groups will be lit green (e.g. FLY KEY).
- The **ON AIR** secret-till-lit LEDs in the Effects Keyers group and under the key and DSK transition buttons in the Transition Control group glow red when the key is on air.
- The **EDIT** secret-till-lit LED under the **MENU** button in the System Control group is lit when the Editor option is installed and enabled.
- The auto transition rate in the System Control group is constantly visible.
- When the switcher is in “memory mode”, the last memory register accessed is displayed in the System Control group.
- The four-character **MODE** displays in the Effects Control, Mattes, and System Control groups, always inform you of which function has control of each group.
- The LEDs in the Transition Progress Bar show you how far the transition has progressed, and which direction the fader must travel to complete it.

General Purpose Interface

The Synergy 100 MD is equipped with ten dedicated GPI inputs. Each GPI input can be used to perform simple editing and switcher functions such as fade to black, an auto transition, and a memory recall.

Note: GPI outputs are not implemented as this time.

Emergency Bypass Relays

The Synergy 100 MD frame also includes 2 dedicated power-fail relays. These normally closed relays open in the event of a power failure, or other system fault that prevents a reliable program output (for example, removal of a Video Output card). These relays can be used to control an external emergency routing system.

Control Panel Tallies

Sixteen tallies come standard with the Synergy 100 MD control panel.

10 Meter Control Cable

The Synergy 100 MD control panel and rack frame are connected by a single, standard 8-pin flat-shielded Telco cable that uses RS-422 communication. The maximum cable length between the control panel and its rack frame is 1,000 feet or 305 meters.
**Synergy Slots**

The Synergy 100 MD incorporates a special mode in which pseudo-random information is statistically measured on a cumulative basis.

**System Options**

This section lists the options available for the Synergy 100 MD. All options can be easily installed in the field.

**Note** Refer to Chapter 15 “Hardware Options” in the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* for instructions on how to verify the status of your installed hardware options.

**Conversion Frames**

All switcher inputs and outputs are 10-bit 4:2:2 serial digital, including the system reference. Signal sources of other video formats must be converted to serial digital. Ross Video chose to do this conversion externally to ensure that the very latest conversion technology and most competitive pricing is available to our customers. An added bonus of external conversion is the ability to use those converters elsewhere in your facility as you eventually upgrade your switcher sources to serial digital. The table below lists the Ross products that qualify as converters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Converter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADC-8032B</td>
<td>Analog Composite to SDI Digital Decoder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC-8032B-S</td>
<td>Analog Composite to SDI Digital Decoder with Frame Sync</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC-8033</td>
<td>Analog Component to SDI Converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC-8035</td>
<td>Dual Analog Composite to SDI Converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMA-8011A</td>
<td>SDI Component Monitoring Amplifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMA-8011A-7</td>
<td>SDI Component Monitoring Amplifier with 7 reclocked SDI Outputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAC-8013</td>
<td>SDI to Analog Component Converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAC-8016A</td>
<td>SDI to Analog Composite Converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAC-8016A-S</td>
<td>SDI to Analog Composite Converter with Frame Sync</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAC-8016A-SX</td>
<td>SDI to Analog Composite Converter with Frame Sync and X-Color Filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAC-8016A-X</td>
<td>SDI to Analog Composite Converter with X-Color Filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QMA-8044</td>
<td>Quad SDI to Analog Composite Monitoring Amplifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UMA-8017</td>
<td>Universal SDI Monitoring Amplifier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please visit our web site or contact your Ross Video representative to obtain a current Ross Video Product Catalog for detailed information on our complete line of converters.

**Squeeze & Tease MD Carrier**

This is an optional carrier card equipped with a high performance DSP (Digital Signal Processing) module. One of these cards must be purchased in order to install the Squeeze & Tease MD or Squeeze & Tease MD WARP option cards.
Squeeze & Tease MD

One Squeeze & Tease MD option provides two channels of 3D planar effects. The Synergy 100 MD can have up to two of these options, providing an impressive 4 channels of 3D DVE.

**Note**

The Squeeze & Tease MD can only be installed on the Squeeze & Tease MD Carrier board.

The following are some of the functions you will be able to do with the Squeeze & Tease MD option:

**Fly ANY kind of Key**

Pressing the FLY KEY button easily activates Squeeze & Tease MD allowing you to transform self Keys, linear Keys, and chroma Keys. A comprehensive and intuitive menu is available where you can set up your desired effects. If you prefer, the 3-axis joystick can also be used to adjust your Key’s parameters.

**Preprocessor Effects**

Preprocessor effects include wide range defocus with separate H and V controls, mosaic, posterization, colorization, and a strobe effect that allows you to vary the number of on and off frames to provide enhanced creative possibilities. All preprocessor effects are available to be combined simultaneously.

**Lighting**

All images and Keys can also have realistic natural lighting applied to them. Squeeze & Tease MD makes it easy with “quick presets”, a positionable light source, and powerful ambient and min/max lighting controls.

**Advanced Picture Frame Border Generator**

Squeeze & Tease MD can add a picture frame to border over-the-shoulder boxes. This variable width border perfectly tracks all image resizing and special effects. The picture frame generator instantly adds a polished, professional look to your squeeze backs.

This picture frame can be the simple, single color type, or one of many picture frame effects including roman column, tubular, beveled, computer style, tri-color, and more. These picture frame effects have the following adjustable controls:

- hard or variable edge softness
- edge width/scaling
- inside/outside edge softness symmetry
- diagonal, horizontal, and vertical corner joint selection
- full control of all three picture frame color generators.

**Advanced Planar Controls**

The following advanced controls make building the ideal look for your show just that much easier:

- **Front Side/Back Side** — When you look at the backside of an effect, you can have it automatically select a different video signal on the Key bus. This makes it possible, for example, to rotate between 2 channels of still store in an over-the-shoulder box in a single Keyer, using only 1 channel of S&T MD.

- **Auto Flip** — When you rotate an image in normal mode, the backside appears upside down or mirrored. Turning on Auto Flip ensures that the front side of an image is always presented. This is great for the manipulation of still store and CG text.
• **Internal Key Combiner** — Squeeze backs can be combined and displayed in a single Keyer. This effectively adds additional Keyers to the Synergy MLE.

• **Key Combiner Priority Control** — Getting the channels the way you want them is easy with S&T MD. When several squeeze backs are combined in a single Keyer, you can choose fixed priorities, auto-priority, or intersecting planes. Auto-priority automatically calculates the channel priority based on their relative positions in 3D space. With the intersecting planes choice, channels will literally cut into one another channel hiding the portions that are hidden behind them.

**Pre-Built Effects, User-Built Timelines, and Key Sequences**

Squeeze & Tease MD ships with dozens of prebuilt effects that are ready to take to air. More effects can be downloaded from our website. All of these effects can be easily user modified to meet your needs. You can also build entirely new effects of your own from scratch.

Effects can be built to start when a macro button is pressed, when an auto transition is pressed, or can be run under manual fader control. Effects can be used as a transition, or as a sequence of Keyframes running inside one or more Keyers.

**Squeeze & Tease MD WARP**

Squeeze & Tease MD WARP adds extensive curvilinear effects to an MLE with Squeeze & Tease MD installed. These effects can be applied to transitions or Keys where a planar channel or Key-combined group of channels is being used.

**Note**

| The Synergy 100 MD Switcher will support only one S&T WARP option. |

**WARP Effects**

WARP effects include such ones as page turn, ripple, wave, mirror, melt, lenses and many more. The creative possibilities are endless as S&T MD WARP effects can be easily combined with preprocessor, planar transformation, lighting and picture frame effects.

**Assignable Remote Aux Panels**

A **Remote Aux Panel** is a self-contained switching unit that has its own power supply. It mounts in a 19-inch rack and fills one RU (Rack Unit).

An **Assignable Remote Aux Panel** controls multiple Aux Bus outputs.

```
BLACK  MLE  PV  PRE  PVAM  VFM  ASSGN 1  ASSGN 2  ASSGN 3  ASSGN 4  ASSGN 5  ASSGN 6  ASSGN 7  ASSGN 8  ASSGN 9  ASSGN 10
```

**Synergy 100 MD Remote Aux Panel**

The Remote Aux Panels include dedicated buttons for Preview, Program, Clean Feed, and for accessing multiple Aux Bus Outputs — plus a bright “on-air” LED.
The following features will affect the positioning of Remote Aux Panels in relation to the control panel:

- **The Assignable** Aux panel options include a 33-foot (10 meter) cable, but custom lengths, up to a maximum of 1000 feet or 305 meters (as limited by RS-422 specifications), between panels is possible. Contact Ross Video for details.

- The communications signal is re-buffered at each Remote Aux Panel.

- Remote Aux Panel assignments are performed using the control panel and menu system. Refer to the section “Setting Up Remote Aux Panels” in the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* for more information.

**MultiDSK (DSK 4 and DSK 5)**

This option adds a fourth and a fifth linear Downstream Keyer to the standard internal DSK. These Downstream Keyers have access to every video source, and are fully integrated into the transition system with full preview.

The hardware for this option resides on the Video Output Board, and will consume four Output BNCs to supply the DSKs with Video and Key sources.

**Editor and Automation Interface**

It is common to use an editor to control a video production switcher in linear editing and packaging applications. With the editor interface option, the Synergy 100 MD can interface to all popular editing systems. Any area of the switcher can be controlled using an RS-232 or RS-422 interface and industry-standard GVG 100, 200, or 4000 editor protocol. The editor can be used to read and write switcher functions including video input selection, pushbutton enable and disable, control settings, and memory registers. If complete control of all switcher parameters from an editor or remote device is necessary, this option is required.

**Small Audio Mixer Interface**

This option enables serial control for enhanced audio-follow-video from the Synergy 100 MD switcher over small audio mixers, allowing integrated A/V production possible.

You can purchase the small but powerful Yamaha 01V96 audio mixer console through any Ross Video distributor. This mixer has up to 16 analog inputs, 16 digital inputs, and a proven interface to our production switchers.

**Serial Tally Interface**

This option enables Serial Tally Interface using industry standard protocols to Under Monitor Display and Tally Systems. The standard parallel tally interface will continue to operate normally when this option is enabled.
Control Panel Redundant Power

This provides a spare “quick swap” power supply for the Synergy 100 MD control panel. The control panel power supply consists of a custom external “brick” which includes a locking connector. It can be easily changed in a few seconds.

Frame Redundant Power

This option provides redundant power for those who have replaced or upgraded their frame and already have redundant power for their panel.

Spare Parts Kit

A Spare Parts Kit is available which provides switcher parts according to the following criteria:

- the part comes into frequent contact with the user
- the part can be easily damaged or may wear out with excessive use
- the part can be damaged by connecting excessive voltage to an external connector
- the part is used in system power management
- the part can be lost easily

Custom Cable for Main Control Panel

The Control Panel cable connects the control panel to the electronics frame. It is a shielded 8-pin RJ-45, CAT5 cable. The control panel and frame can be separated by a maximum of 300 meters.

A 10 meter control panel cable is supplied as standard with the switcher. If cable lengths other than 10 meters are needed, a custom cable can be ordered (by the meter).
A Word about Technical Support

At Ross Video, we take pride in the quality of our products, but if problems occur, help is as close as the nearest telephone.

Our 24 Hour Hot Line service ensures you have access to technical expertise around the clock. After-sales service and technical support is provided directly by Ross personnel. During business hours (eastern standard time), technical support personnel are available by telephone any time. After hours and on weekends, a direct emergency technical support phone line is available. If the technical support personnel who is on call does not answer this line immediately, a voice message can be left and the call will be returned shortly. These people are available to react to any problem and to do whatever is necessary to ensure customer satisfaction.

For Technical Support, call (+1) 613-652-4886 and, for After Hours Emergency, dial (+1) 613-349-0006.
# Product Comparison Charts

As a comparison, the following tables detail the features and options that are available with the different Synergy MD switchers with no optional equipment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>100 MD</th>
<th>1 MD</th>
<th>1.5 MD</th>
<th>2 MD</th>
<th>2.5 MD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of MLEs</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of MLE Keyers</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2*</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input BNCs</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16 (+16)</td>
<td>16 (+16)</td>
<td>16 (+16)</td>
<td>16 (+16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output BNCs</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel Accessible Inputs</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UltraChrome Chroma Keying</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>MLE 1</td>
<td>MLE 1 and 2</td>
<td>MLE 1 and 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Control Buttons</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programmable Custom Controls</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of MLE Keyers</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of DSKs</td>
<td>1 (+2)</td>
<td>(+2)†</td>
<td>2 (+2)*</td>
<td>2 (+2)</td>
<td>2 (+2)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSK Self Keys</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSK PST PATT Keys</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSK Auto Select Key</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSK Chroma Key</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Button Accessible Aux Buses on Control Panel</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonics Available</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control Panel Tallies</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>36 (+36)</td>
<td>36 (+36)</td>
<td>36 (+36)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numbers in ( ) represent optional upgrades that are available.

* There is reduced functionality on the Keyers of the Half MLE.

† The **Synergy 1 MD** does not have Downstream Keyers as standard. The MultiDSK option must be installed in order to use the Downstream Keys.
Control Panel Introduction

In This Chapter

This chapter provides an introduction to the Synergy 100 MD control panel. The following topics are discussed:

- Control Panel Sections
- Video Flow through the Switcher
- Switcher Timeout
- Resetting the Switcher
- Shutting Down the Switcher
- Restarting the Switcher
Control Panel Sections

The following figure displays a top view of the Synergy 100 MD control panel, with each control panel section identified. The legend beneath the illustration names each section.

1. Program/Preset Buses

The Program/Preset Buses are two rows of crosspoint buttons (one button per video input source) that represent your primary switcher output selection area.

- The Program bus is the video source currently on air. This is the background image — that is, the image that is visually behind all other images (or farthest upstream, electronically).
- The Preset bus selects the source on the MLE that you are transitioning to — using a cut, dissolve, wipe or DVE transition.

1) Program/Preset Buses
2) Key Bus
3) Effects Keyers Group
4) Memory and Effects Control Groups
5) Mattes Groups
6) System Control Group
7) Downstream Keyer Group
8) Transition Control Group
9) USB Port
10) Positioner
2. **Key Bus**

The **Key Bus** row is used to select key sources that can be keyed (electronically cut) into the background. The **Key** bus is *shared* between the three keyers (two **Effects Keyers** and a **Downstream Keyer**).

3. **Effects Keyers Group**

The **Effects Keyers Group** allows you to select the key type and associated parameters for the Effects keys. Choose between **Self Key**, **Auto Select Key**, **Chroma Key**, and **PST PATT Key**. Within the group, you can also select a variety of key modifiers and parameters. When any button is selected in the group, the **Key** bus is assigned to the **Effects Keyers**.

Electronically, the **Effects Keyers** are downstream (visually in front) of the background buses, but upstream (visually in back) of the **Downstream Keyer**.

**Note**

The **Effects Keyers Group** is used to set up both Key 1 and Key 2. Each key can be set to a different key type, if desired, and have its own individual set of key modifiers and parameters.

4. **Memory and Effects Control Groups**

The **Memory and Effects Control Groups** are *assignable* groups of controls that allow you to choose wipe patterns and adjust various parameters of the selected pattern. In addition, the pattern buttons are used to store and recall switcher parameters, and as a means of navigation within the switcher menu system.

5. **Mattes Groups**

The **Mattes Groups** are *assignable* modules that allow you to adjust matte colors. By pressing any matte-related button on the switcher, or the **SEL** button beneath the **Mattes** display, the **Mattes** groups are assigned.

6. **System Control Group**

The **System Control Group** includes the **SEL** button, which, when used in conjunction with the **100**, **10**, and **1** buttons, allows the user to navigate through the menu system and assign transition rates to AUTO TRANS, DSK DISS and FADE TO BLACK auto transitions. The **MENU** button is used to access the menu system of the **Synergy 100 MD** switcher.

7. **Downstream Keyer Group**

The **Downstream Keyer Group** allows you to select the key type and associated parameters for the Downstream Key (DSK). Choose between **Self Key** or **Auto Select Key**.

The **CLIP** knob adjusts the luminance, or *threshold*, level of the key and the **GAIN** knob adjusts the sharpness or softness of the edges of the key.

With the **XFX Board with Dual Border** option installed, the **BORD**, **SHDW**, and **OUTL** buttons place a border, drop shadow or outline around the Key.

**Note**

The **XFX Board with Dual Border** option is not yet implemented.

In addition, there are **CHAR GEN1** and **CHAR GEN2** buttons, which allow you to pick your *favorite CGs* for immediate keying.
When any button is selected in the group, the **Key Bus** is assigned to the Downstream Keyer. An **ON AIR** LED under the **DSK CUT** and **DSK DISS** buttons in the **Transition Control Group**, indicates when the downstream key is contributing to the program output.

Electronically, the Downstream key is downstream (visually in front) of both the background buses and the Effects keys.

### 8. Transition Control Group

The **Transition Control Group** allows you to select the type of transition that you want to perform between the current scene and the next scene. You can transition *any combination* of the **Program/Preset** and **Key** buses using a cut, wipe, or dissolve.

The **DVE** button allows you to perform transitions using effects from an *optional* Squeeze & Tease daughter board. Transitions can be performed manually with the **Fader** or automatically with the **AUTO TRANS** button.

The **Fade to Black** button allows you to fade the switcher to black.

---

**Note**

If you have the **MultiDSK Option** installed, the **TRANS LIMIT** and **PST BLACK** buttons will be changed to **DSK4 DISS** and **DSK5 DISS**, respectively and the Transition Limit and PST Black features will be unavailable.

### 9. USB Port

The USB Port allows you to store and recall your entire switcher setup to and from a USB Drive.

### 10. Positioner

The **Positioner** allows you to position wipe patterns on screen. By pressing the **WIPE** button in the **Transition Control Group** or the **PST PATT** button in the **Effects Keyers** group, the **Positioner** is assigned. If the **Squeeze & Tease MD** or **Squeeze & Tease WARP MD** option is installed, the **Positioner** can be used to manipulate the X, Y, and in the case of the Squeeze & Tease WARP MD option, the Z position of a **Squeeze & Tease MD Key**.
Video Flow through the Switcher

The following diagram shows how video flows through your switcher, and illustrates the visual and electronic concepts of upstream and downstream video images.

The Synergy 100 MD is a single MLE switcher with 16 standard inputs. Video flows into the MLE, as indicated above, where crosspoints can be selected for effects creation.

The **Program** and **Preset** buses are electronically the farthest upstream, the Effects Keys appear midstream and the Downstream Key appears downstream.

- Visually, all images on the Background bus appear *behind* both keyers. A key enabled on the Effects Keyer appears visually *over* the Background bus (and all transitions), but visually *under* the Downstream Keyer.
- A key enabled on the Downstream Keyer appears visually *over* the Background bus and the Effects Keys.
- The **Fade to Black** function is electronically downstream of the entire switcher. Regardless of the combination of keys selected, **Fade to Black** will visually take the entire switcher to black.
Switcher Timeout

If no control panel buttons are touched and no fader arms are moved for a period of 10 minutes, the switcher goes into a “sleep” mode and all lights are automatically turned off. This function is specifically designed to extend the life of the displays and the button LEDs.

If this timeout occurs, press any button or move the fader or joystick to “wake” the switcher and turn on all lights.

**Note**

The switcher does *not* act on a button push when it is coming out of “sleep” mode.

The factory default timeout interval is 10 minutes. For instructions on programming an alternate timeout interval, refer to the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual*. 
Reseting the Switcher

If required, you can perform a software reset to clear all effects and crosspoint selections currently active.

**Important** Performing a Reset will set all crosspoints to Black, including the main PGM output.

The software reset function is performed in the Effects Control Group and System Control Group.

Press and hold the **CNTR** button in the Effects Control Group and the **SEL** button in the System Control Group to perform a software reset. Note the small “reset” symbols beside each button.

This resets the control panel to its default values. Switcher memory registers, personality registers, and installation registers are not affected by the reset, but all other switcher parameters, such as the current state of the panel, are reset. **BLACK** will be selected on all buses.
Shutting Down the Switcher

This section provides information and instructions for safely shutting down your Synergy 100 MD Switcher.

**Important**
Due to the sensitive electronics used in your Synergy 100 MD Switcher, you should not shutdown the switcher by turning off the power supplies. This could damage the switcher.

Use the following procedure to shutdown the switcher:

1. Navigate to the Default Menu as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **7. Options** to display the **Options Menu**.
   - Press **5. System Resets** to display the **System Resets Menu**.

2. Press **1. System Shutdown** to display the **System Shutdown Confirmation Screen**.

3. Press **0. Confirm** to shutdown the switcher.

**Operating Tip**
Press **1. Cancel** to *not* shutdown the switcher and return to the Default Menu.

This completes the procedure for shutting down the switcher.
Restarting the Switcher

This section provides information and instructions for safely restarting your Synergy 100 MD Switcher.

**Important** Due to the sensitive electronics used in your Synergy 100 MD Switcher, you should not restart the switcher by turning the power supplies off and on again. This could damage the switcher.

Use the following procedure to restart the switcher:

1. Navigate to the **Default Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **7. Options** to display the **Options Menu**.
   - Press **5. System Resets** to display the **System Resets Menu**.

   ![System Resets Menu]

2. Press **2. System Restart** to display the **System Restart Confirmation Screen**.

   ![System Restart Confirmation Screen]

3. Press **0. Confirm** to restart the switcher.

   ![Operating Tip]

   Press **1. Cancel** to *not* restart the switcher and return to the **Default Menu**.

This completes the procedure for restarting the switcher.
Using the Menu System

In This Chapter

This chapter introduces the menu system of the Synergy 100 MD Switcher. The following topics are discussed:

- Menu System Basics
- Menu Information
- Navigation Menus
- Option Menus
- Split Menus
- Menu System Operation
- Help Features
Menu System Basics

The menu system is accessed using the **System Control Group** of the Synergy 100 MD control panel and displayed on the preview monitor as a **Preview Overlay**.

The following figure details the panel buttons that are used to access the menus.

1. **ASPECT Button**
   
   The **ASPECT** button lights automatically to indicate that the **Aspect** knob is active and can be used to scroll through values in the menus.

2. **SCROLL (ASPECT) Knob**
   
   The **Aspect** knob can be used to scroll through the menu values.

3. **Effects Control Group**
   
   The **Pattern** buttons in the **Effects Control Group** allow you to use the menu system to navigate to sub-menus or select menu items by pressing the corresponding number. Refer to the section “**Menu System Operation**” on page 3–7 for more information.

4. **MENU Button**
   
   The **MENU** button turns the menu system of the Synergy 100 MD on and off. When toggled on, the **MENU** button will light green and the **Main Menu** is displayed on the **Preview Monitor**.

**Note**

You must have a monitor connected to **Preview with Overlay, BNC C02**, in order to view the menu system. If you have the MultiDSK option installed, connect your monitor to **BNC C07**.
5. BACK (100)
Pressing the BACK (100) button will return you to the previous menu or position in the menu tree.

6. DOWN ARROW (10)
Pressing the DOWN ARROW (10) button will scroll DOWN to the next item in a selection list or to the next menu item.

7. UP ARROW (1)
Pressing the UP ARROW (1) button will scroll UP to the next item in a selection list or to the next menu item.

8. Right SEL Button
Pressing the right SEL button will SELECT / ACCEPT your option, setup, or position in the menu tree.

9. Display
Once you have entered the menu system, MENU appears in the four-character MODE displays in the Effects Control and System Control Groups. This identifies the menu system as the area of the control panel that has control of the buttons and knobs in the Effects Control and System Control Groups.

Menu Information

There are 3 types of menus on the Synergy 100 MD Switcher that allow you to alter settings and configure inputs and outputs. These types are Navigation Menus, Option Menus, and Split Menus.

Navigation Menus

Navigation Menus, such as the Main Menu, are used strictly to navigate from menu to menu. They have no configuration options and will not change as you select different options.
1. **Menu Title**
   Each menu is named in the upper left corner.

2. **Software Version**
   The **Main Menu** is the only one that displays the software version number in the upper right hand corner.

3. **Menu Items**
   Menu Items, or headings, can be selected to change their current settings, or used to navigate to sub-menus. Menu items that do not have selections next to them will take you to a sub-menu. Refer to the section “Option Menus” on page 3–4 for more information on menu selections.

   When a menu item is highlighted, this indicates that it is active and can be accessed using the right SEL button. When selected, the menu item or the selection for it, will change color to indicate that you can change the current configuration.

   **Note**
   If a menu item is gray, it cannot be changed.

4. **Navigation Legend**
   The navigation legend provides information on how to navigate to the different sub-menus, or select menu items.

5. **Menu Background**
   The menu background can be turned on and off for some menus. When turned on, the images on the preview are not visible. This allows you to read the menu more easily.

   **Note**
   Menus such as the UltraChrome Parameters Menu turn the menu background feature off so that you can preview your Chroma Key before taking it on-air.

**Option Menus**

Option Menus, such as the Inputs Menu, function in much the same way as the Navigation Menus, except that they allow you to configure specific settings on the switcher, as well as navigate to different menus. In many cases, these settings are dependent on each other, meaning that as you make a selection for one menu item, the other menu items will change to indicate the current setting. In the Inputs BNC Config Menu, for example, menu item 0. Output BNC is used to select a BNC you want to configure. When menu item 0 is set to a BNC, all other menu items update to show the current configuration for the BNC you selected for 0. Input.
1. **Menu Items**

Menu Items, or headings, can be selected to change their current settings, or used to navigate to sub-menus. Menu items that do not have selections next to them will take you to a sub-menu.

When a menu item is highlighted, this indicates that it is active and can be accessed using the right SEL button. When selected, the menu item or the selection for it, will change color to indicate that you can change the current configuration.

2. **Menu Selections**

Menu Selections indicate the current configuration of a menu item. The menu items can be changed, allowing you to assign different configurations to the switcher, or to other menu selections.

**Split Menus**

Split Menus, such as the Network Setup Menu, are used to adjust multiple or complex, options for a single menu item. Split Menus are identified by a vertical line that separates the menu items from the options. When a menu item is selected, the configurable option for that item are listed below the vertical line. In the Network Setup Menu, for example, when you select 4. Secondary DNS, the option for this item is displayed below the vertical line. As this option has 4 numbers that are to be entered, it is considered a complex menu item.
you to a sub-menu. Refer to the section “Option Menus” on page 3–4 for more information on menu selections.

When a menu item is highlighted, this indicates that it is active and can be accessed using the right SEL button. When selected, the menu item or the selection for it, will change color to indicate that you can change the current configuration.

2. Menu Selections

Menu Selections for some menus are separated from the menu items by a vertical line. This is often used when there are multiple selections for a single menu item, or if it is a complex selection with multiple parts, as in the case of the Secondary DNS.

This concludes the discussion on the types of menus on the Synergy 100 MD. For more information on using the menu system, refer to the section “Menu System Operation” on page 3–7.
Menu System Operation

The menu system on the Synergy 100 MD allows you to set up the various inputs and outputs, as well as communications with external devices and various peripheral settings for switcher operation.

In order to navigate through the menus of the Synergy 100 MD, you will have to learn how to access the menu system, navigate to the various menus on the switcher, and alter the settings you find on the menus.

The following example will show you how to navigate to the Inputs Menu and set up a particular Input BNC:

1. Press **MENU** in the System Control Group to display the Main Menu. The **MENU** button will light green and the **Main Menu** will be displayed on the Preview Monitor.

2. Navigate to the Inputs Menu 1 as follows:

   - **Operating Tip**: Menu items that do not have a menu selection next to them, and are not part of a split menu, will display a sub-menu when selected.

   - The Pattern buttons in the Effects Control Group each have a number below them, corresponding to the numbers beside the menu items.
Effects Control Group — Pattern Button Numbers

- Press the **Pattern** button corresponding to the number next to the menu item that you want to select. In this case, press the pattern button with the 1 below it.

**Operating Tip**

Navigation instructions are identified by the number next to the menu item. In this example you will navigate to the **Input Menu 1**, so you would be instructed to press **1. Inputs** to display the **Inputs Menu 1**.

- The **Inputs Menu 1** is displayed instead of the **Main Menu**. If the **Inputs Menu 1** is not shown, you can press the **BACK** button to return to the **Main Menu**. The **BACK** button will return you to the previous menu, or de-select a menu item you have selected.

3. Press **0. Inputs** to display the **Inputs Menu 2**.
Now that you have navigated to the proper menu, you can select the Input BNC you want to set up.

4. Select Input BNC C10 as follows:
   - Press 0. Input.
   - Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select BNC C10.
   - Press the right SEL button to accept the new settings.

   With BNC C10 active, all the menu selections apply to this particular BNC. If you change the active BNC again, the menu selections will update to reflect the new BNC.

5. Change the Type for BNC C10 to Alpha as follows:
   - Press 1. Type.
   - Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select Alpha.

   Alpha — Select this option when an alpha signal (also known as a “Key” signal) is connected to the frame. Devices such as DVEs, Character Generators, Graphics (Paint) Systems, and Still Stores typically provide unique alpha signals.
• Press the right SEL button to accept the new settings.

![Menu System Synergy 100 MD Operator's Manual (v7.2 MD-S100)](image)

- You have now set BNC C10 up as an Alpha. Other configuration changes are made to this, and other menu items in the same manner as you have just performed. Now that you have finished configuring the BNC, you will want to exit the menu system.

6. Press MENU to display the Installation Change Screen. Whenever you change any of the switcher settings, you will be asked to confirm these changes when you exit the menu system. In this case, since we changed BNC C10 to an Alpha, the switcher requires us to confirm this change.

![Installation Change Screen](image)

7. Accept or cancel these changes as follows:

- Press 0. Confirm to accept the changes.
- Press 1. Cancel to exit the menus safely, without making any changes. The system returns to the previously stored settings.

This completes the example procedure for navigating to the Inputs Menu and setting up a particular BNC.

**Important**

As this has been an example, you should press 1. Cancel so as not to change the setting of your Synergy 100 MD switcher.
Help Features

A help feature is provided for convenient online assistance as you operate your Synergy 100 MD switcher.

Help Menu

The Help Menu provides a list of important “hidden” switcher functions. For example, you can access instructions to use the two-button Copy Key function.

When a function is selected, information about the requested function is displayed in the lower half of the menu screen.

Use the following procedure to access and browse the Help Menu:

1. Navigate to the Help Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.

2. Use the and buttons to select a function, and view information about the function in the lower half of the menu screen.

This completes the procedure to access and browse the Help Menu.
Switcher Basics

In This Chapter

This chapter presents detailed basic switcher operating procedures, rules and methods. The following topics are discussed:

- Switcher Personality
- Basic Switcher Functions
- Buttons
- Reverse SHIFT Mode
- Flip Flop Operations
- Key Bus
- On-Air Indicators
- Knobs
- Fade to Black
- Resetting the Switcher
- Software Reset
- Full Restart
- Shutting Down the Switcher
Switcher Personality

From the **Personality Menu** you can set a number of features that affect how the switcher will operate or react to certain situations. These include the ability to perform a transition preview, auto recall, or how the switcher will react to certain button presses, such as DSK drop or the menu button. You will also use the Personality Menu to set the sleep time for the switcher.

The following topics are discussed:

- Transition Preview
- DSK Drop
- Sleep Time
- Menu Button Operation
- Auto Recall
- Global-Store Memory Recall
- Isolate MultiDSK

**Transition Preview**

The Transition Preview (TransPV) feature allows you to preview a complete transition on the Preview Monitor, without affecting the Program output.

Use the following procedure to enable the transition preview feature.

1. Navigate to the **Personality Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **6. Personality** to display the **Personality Menu**.

2. Enable the transition preview feature as follows:
   - Press **0. Trans PV**.
   - Press the right **SEL** to toggle this feature **On** or **Off**.

**Operating Tip**

To perform a **Transition Preview**, press and **hold** the transition type button (**DISS** or **WIPE**) while performing the transition. The complete transition will be displayed on the Preview Monitor.

This completes the procedure for enabling the auto transition feature.
DSK Drop

The Downstream Keyer Drop (DSK Drop) feature allows you to have the DSK cut off-air whenever a new source is selected directly on the Program Bus. This means that if the DSK is in on-air and you select any crosspoint on the Program Bus, the DSK will be cut off-air and the new source on the Program Bus will be cut on-air.

Note

The DSK Drop feature will not affect the DSK if a transition is performed on the Program Bus, or if the same crosspoint button on the Program Bus is pressed.

Use the following procedure to enable the DSK drop feature.

1. Navigate to the Personality Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 6. Personality to display the Personality Menu.

2. Enable the DSK drop feature as follows:
   - Press 1. DSK Drop.
   - Press the right SEL button to toggle this feature between Auto or Manual.
     ~ Auto — Select this option to have the DSK automatically cut off-air when a new source is selected on the Program Bus.
     ~ Manual — Select this option to have the DSK take no action when a new source is selected on the Program Bus.

This completes the procedure for enabling the DSK drop feature.

Sleep Time

The Sleep Time feature allows you to set the amount of time that must pass without the control panel being used before the control panel goes into Sleep Mode. In sleep mode the buttons and displays on the control panel will not be lit and

Note

Having the switcher go into sleep mode, or pressing a button to bring the switcher out of sleep mode, will not affect the current settings of the switcher.
Use the following procedure to enable and set the sleep time feature.

1. Navigate to the Personality Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 6. Personality to display the Personality Menu.

   ![Personality Menu](image)

2. Enable and set the sleep time feature as follows:
   - Press 2. Sleep Time.
   - Use the  and  buttons to set the time interval that must pass before the switcher will go into sleep mode.
   - Press SEL in the System Control Group to accept the new setting.

   **Note** Setting the Sleep Time interval to Off will disable the Sleep Time feature.

   This completes the procedure for enabling and setting the Sleep Time feature.

### Menu Button Operation

The Menu Button feature allows you to set the action that is taken when the MENU button in the System Control Group is pressed. You can have the switcher bring up the menu system, or enter Edit mode when the button is pressed or double-pressed.

   **Note** You must have an editor set up in the communications menu in order to be able to control the Synergy 100 MD switcher from an editor.

Use the following procedure to set the action taken when the MENU button is pressed.

1. Navigate to the Personality Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 6. Personality to display the Personality Menu.
2. Set the action taken when the **MENU** button is pressed as follows:

   - Press **3. Menu Bttn**.
   
   - Use the [↓] and [↑] buttons to set the action for the **MENU** button. You can choose between the following:
     
     - **Menu - Edit** — Select this option to have a *single* press of the **MENU** button bring up the **Menu**, and a *double-press* enable or disable the **Editor Mode**.
     
     - **Edit - Menu** — Select this option to have a *single* press of the **MENU** button enable or disable the **Editor Mode**, and a *double-press* bring up the **Menu**.
     
     - **Menu Only** — Select this option to have the **MENU** button bring up the **Menu** only. For this option you *cannot* enable or disable the **Editor Mode** with the **MENU** button.

   - Press **SEL** in the **System Control Group** to accept the new setting.

This completes the procedure for setting the action that is taken when the **MENU** button is pressed.

### Auto Recall

The Auto Recall feature allows you to have memory attributes, such as Effects Dissolve (**EFF DISS**), saved with the memory so that when the memory is recalled, and **Auto Recall** is active, Effects **Dissolve** will be toggled **On**.

Use the following procedure to enable the auto recall feature.

1. Navigate to the **Personality Menu** as follows:
   
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   
   - Press **6. Personality** to display the **Personality Menu**.
2. Enable the auto recall feature as follows:
   • Press **4. AutoRcall**.
   • Press SEL in the **System Control Group** to toggle this feature **On** or **Off**.
   
   This completes the procedure for enabling the auto recall feature.

**Global-Store Memory Recall**

The **Global-Store Memory Recall** feature allows you to enable or disable Global-Store Memory Recalls on your switcher. Setting this feature to **ON** will recall the previously saved Global-Store memory. Setting this feature to **OFF** will prevent Global-Store Memory Recalls from being performed.

Use the following procedure to enable the **Global-Store Memory Recall** feature.

1. Navigate to the **Personality Menu** as follows:
   • Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   • Press **6. Personality** to display the **Personality Menu**.
   
2. Enable the auto recall feature as follows:
   • Press **5. GstoreMem**.
   • Press SEL in the **System Control Group** to toggle this feature **On** or **Off**.
   
   This completes the procedure for enabling the **Global-Store Memory Recall** feature.
Isolate MultiDSK

You can isolate the two MultiDSKs to prevent them from being affected by memory recalls and switcher soft-resets. Isolated MultiDSKs also can not be included in Program/Preset-MLE transitions (you can still transition them using the keys in the **Downstream Keyer Group**). Isolated MultiDSKs are not affected by certain actions that you perform on the switcher as follows:

- **Memory Recalls** — Memory registers that were saved with MultiDSK sources and configurations will not overwrite the current MultiDSK settings when recalled. The non-MultiDSK settings in the memory registered will be recalled.
- **Switcher Soft-Reset** — Performing a switcher soft-reset will not return the MultiDSKs to a default state. All MultiDSK settings including the selected source, key type, and on-air status will be preserved.
- **Program/Preset MLE Transitions** — You can not include MultiDSKs in Program/Preset MLE transitions. You must transition the MultiDSKs on and off-air using only the buttons in the **Downstream Keyer Group**.

Use the following procedure to isolate your MultiDSKs:

1. Navigate to the **Personality Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **6. Personality** to display the **Personality Menu**.

   ![Personality Menu]

2. Press **6. Isolate DSK** to toggle this option on or off.

This completes the procedure to isolate your MultiDSKs.
Basic Switcher Functions

This section provides basic information and general rules regarding Synergy 100 MD operation. The following topics are discussed:

- Buttons
- Reverse SHIFT Mode
- Flip Flop Operations

Buttons

There are three basic types of buttons on the Synergy 100 MD switcher; Crosspoint, Function, and Shift buttons. These buttons will act in either a latching mode, or a momentary mode, depending on the action they are performing.

Button Modes

There are two basic modes of button operation on the switcher, latching buttons, such as crosspoint buttons, and momentary buttons, such as CUT or AUTO TRANS buttons. The latching buttons will illuminate when pressed and stay illuminated until either a certain function is performed, or another button is selected. For example, if you press a crosspoint button, it will remain lit until you press another crosspoint button in the same bus, or you perform a transition.

Momentary buttons will illuminate when they are pressed and then turn off on their own when their function has been completed. For example, if you press the AUTO TRANS button, it will illuminate and the switcher will perform a transition. When the transition is complete, the AUTO TRANS button will turn off, indicating that the Auto Transition has been completed.

Crosspoint Buttons

The crosspoint buttons are located on the Key, Program, and Preset buses on the control panel. These latching buttons tell the switcher which video source is selected on each bus. These video sources can be internally generated, such as BLACK and COLOR BKGD, or from external video sources that are connected to the frame via BNC connectors. Refer to Chapter 7, “BNC Configuration and Check” in the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for details on setting up video sources.

Function Buttons

Function buttons make up the majority of the non-crosspoint buttons on the control panel and will perform a specific function when pressed. These buttons can act in either a latching or momentary mode, depending on the function the button is performing.

The latching buttons, such as the AUTO SELECT button in the Effects Keyers Group, will tell the switcher to act in a certain way, depending on the button, or button combination, that is pressed.

The momentary buttons, such as the AUTO TRANS button in the Transition Control Group, will tell the switcher to perform a certain task, and act upon the selections that have been made with the latching buttons.

SHIFT Buttons

There are three SHIFT buttons on the Synergy 100 MD control panel, one for each bus. These shift buttons are pressed and held in order to access video and key sources that have been mapped to
crosspoints beyond the number of available buttons on each bus. The mapping itself is performed during the installation procedure.

**Note**

Active crosspoints 11 through 19 can only be accessed by using the **SHIFT** button. When you select a shifted crosspoint, both the crosspoint button and the shift button will remain lit.

Use the following procedure to select a shifted crosspoint on any bus:

1. Press and hold the **SHIFT** button.
2. Press the desired crosspoint.
3. Release both buttons.

The **SHIFT** button plus the selected source both stay lit, as indicated in the illustration below.

Reverse **SHIFT** Mode

A special mode called Reverse **SHIFT** can be activated during switcher setup. Activating the Reverse **SHIFT** mode makes each **Key Bus** button shifted all the time — as the default state. For example, if you press any crosspoint button, without pressing the **SHIFT** button, the shifted crosspoint will be taken and the **SHIFT** button will be lit. If you hold the **SHIFT** button and press a crosspoint button, an unshifted crosspoint will be taken.

**Note**

The Reverse Shift Mode applies to the **Key** bus only. Crosspoints on the **PGM** and **PST** buses will be unaffected.

**Flip Flop Operations**

The **Program** and **Preset** buses operate in flip-flop mode when a transition is performed. When you perform a **Cut**, **Dissolve**, or **Wipe** transition between the **Program** and **Preset** buses, the two lit crosspoint buttons swap places between the **PGM** and **PST** buses. This is called a flip-flop.

For example, if you select **CAM 2** on the **PGM** bus and **VTR 1** on the **PST** bus, **CAM 2** will be on-air and **VTR 1** will be taken on-air during the next **Background** transition.

**Operating Tip**

A **Background** transition is between the **PGM** bus and **PST** bus, and does not involve the **Key** bus.
After the Background transition is performed, the two buses switch crosspoint selections so that **VTR 1** is now on the **PGM** bus and **CAM 2** on the **PST** bus. This is a Flip-Flop.

If you were to perform another background transition, the crosspoint selections would Flip-Flop back to the original selections.

In this manner, the **PGM** bus *always* shows the crosspoint source that is on-air and the **PST** bus always shows the crosspoint source that will be taken on-air during the next Background transition.

**Key Bus**

The **Key Bus** is where you select the crosspoint source for **Key 1**, **Key 2**, and the **DSK**. The Keyer that has control of the Key Bus is indicated to the left of the bus by the illuminated name. In the case of the MultiDSK option, the DSK indicator will be lit, and the Key Bus will be assigned to the DSK that the Downstream Keyer Group is assigned to.

---

**Operating Tip**

As you switch between Key 1, Key 2, and the DSKs, the crosspoint buttons will indicate which sources are selected for that key. If you change a source, this will not affect the other selections.
On-Air Indicators

There are several ON AIR indicators on the Synergy 100 MD control panel that indicate what is contributing to the main Program output at any one time. These indicators are located in the Effects Keyers Group and the Transition Control Group, as indicated in the following illustration.

**Effects Keyers Group**

There is a single ON AIR indicator in the Effects Keyers Group that will be lit if the selected key in the group is contributing to the main program output. For example, if Key 1 is on-air and Key 2 is not, the ON AIR indicator will be lit when the KEY2 button is not selected. This means that the Effects Keyers Group is controlling Key 1, which is on-air and so the ON AIR indicator will be lit. If you press the KEY2 button to assign the Effects Keyer Group to Key 2, the ON AIR indicator will not be lit because Key 2 is not on-air.

**Transition Control Group**

There are three ON AIR indicators in the Transition Control Group that show you if Key 1, Key 2, or DSK 1 are on-air and contributing to the main program output.

**Note**

If you have the MultiDSK option installed, the two ON AIR indicators below the TRANS LIMIT and PST BLACK buttons will show if DSK4 or DSK5 are on-air.

**Crosspoint Buttons**

When you select a crosspoint on the Key, PGM, or PST buses, the selected button will illuminate to show that it has been selected. If that bus is the PGM bus, or an on-air Key bus, the crosspoint button...
will be lit Red to indicate that the crosspoint is contributing to the main program output. For example, if you select Key 1 for your next transition by pressing the KEY1 button in the Transition Control Group, the Key bus will be assigned to Key 1 and the lit crosspoint will be taken on-air with the next transition. If you perform a transition, you will see the crosspoint button change color from White to Red, indicating that it is now on-air.

**Knobs**

There are ten rotary, end-stop, knobs on the Synergy 100 MD control panel that allow you to adjust various values.

![Knobs Diagram]

*Mattes Group — End-Stop Knobs*

Each of these knobs has an upper and lower limit that it cannot be turned past. When using the knobs, it may be necessary to re-synchronize the knob position with the electronic values you are adjusting.

**Operating Tip**

To re-synchronize an End-stop Knob, turn the knob fully clockwise, then fully counter-clockwise. Full-range adjustments can now be made.
Fade to Black

The Fade to Black function allows you to perform an Auto Transition to Black for the entire Program output of the switcher. It is the last effect that the switcher is capable of performing before the final video signal is passed to the Program Output.

**Note**

Fade to Black only affects the program output of the switcher. Aux Bus outputs or Clean Feed outputs will not be affected by Fade to Black.

**Video Flow Through the Switcher — Fade to Black**

Performing a Fade to Black

Use the following procedure to perform a Fade to Black:

1. Set the Fade Rate for the Fade to Black as follows:

   - Press the SEL button in the System Control Group repeatedly until the word FADE appears in the Mode Area.
   - Use the 100, 10 and 1 buttons to set the rate for the transition in frames.
2. Press the **FADE TO BLACK** button in the *Transition Control Group*.
   The **FADE TO BLACK** button will illuminate as the transition is being performed.

   **Note**
   If you want to cancel, or reverse, the Fade to Black, press the **FADE TO BLACK** button again and the fade will reverse.

   The **FADE TO BLACK** button will flash **Red** when the fade to black transition has been completed.

   **Operating Tip**
   When the switcher is in Fade to Black, you can perform any other effects or transitions in order to prepare your shot for when you perform a Reverse Fade to Black and return to the normal program output.

3. Press the **FADE TO BLACK** button again to fade from black to the normal program output.

   This completes the procedure for performing a Fade to Black operation.
Resetting the Switcher

If required, the Synergy 100 MD can be reset manually from the control panel. There are two types of resets:

- A Software Reset affects software only
- A Full Reset affects hardware and software simultaneously

Software Reset

The software reset function is performed in the Effects Control and System Control groups. Use the following figure for reference:

*Important* Performing a Reset will set all crosspoints to Black, including the main PGM output.

Press and hold the CNTR button in the Effects Control Group and the SEL button in the System Control Group to perform a software reset. Note the small “reset” symbols beside each button.

This resets the control panel to its default values. Switcher memory registers, personality registers, and installation registers are not affected by the reset, but all other switcher parameters, such as the current state of the panel, are reset. BLACK will be selected on all buses.
Full Restart

This function performs both a hardware and a software reset simultaneously. Switcher memory registers, personality registers, installation registers, and custom control registers are not affected by the reset, but all other switcher parameters (for example, the current state of the panel) are reset. **BLACK** will be selected on all buses.

**Important**

It is not recommended to reset the frame by turning the power off and then on again as this may damage the hard disk.

Use the following procedure to perform a full restart of the switcher:

1. Navigate to the **System Resets Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **7. Options** to display the **Options Menu**.
   - Press **5. System Resets** to display the **System Resets Menu**.

   ![System Resets Menu]

2. Press **2. System Restart** to display the **System Restart Confirmation Screen**.

   ![System Restart Confirmation Screen]

3. Press **0. Confirm** to restart the switcher.

   **Operating Tip**

   Press **1. Cancel** to not restart the switcher and return to the **Default Menu**.

This completes the procedure for restarting the switcher.
Shutting Down the Switcher

This function powers off the switcher, placing the CPU Board into a hibernation mode. In this mode it is safe to turn off all your power supplies and remove the CPU Board.

**Important**

It is not recommended to shut down the frame by turning the power off, as this may damage the hard disk.

Use the following procedure to shutdown the switcher:

1. Navigate to the **System Resets Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **7. Options** to display the **Options Menu**.
   - Press **5. System Resets** to display the **System Resets Menu**

   ![System Resets Menu]

2. Press **1. System Shutdown** to display the **System Shutdown Confirmation Screen**.

   ![System Shutdown Confirmation Screen]

3. Press **0. Confirm** to shutdown the switcher.

This completes the procedure for shutting down the switcher.
Transitions

In This Chapter

Transitions are the most frequently used switcher operations. The simplest transition is a direct selection of the next picture on the PGM (Program) bus, performed by pressing another crosspoint. This simple “cut” provides an instantaneous change but does not allow you to preview the next picture.

Other types of transitions involve the PST (Preset) bus and the controls in the Transition Control Group. Here, using cuts, dissolves, wipes, as well as DVE transitions, you have a full preview of the upcoming picture.

The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

- Transition Control Group
- Working with Next Transitions
- Example Transitions
- Eight Steps to a Flawless Transition
- Performing Auto Transitions
- Changing Auto Transition Rates
- Performing Manual Transitions
- Performing Cuts
- Performing Dissolves
- Performing a Transition Limit Effect
- Performing a Transition Preview
- Performing a Preset Black Transition

Synergy 100 MD Operator’s Manual (v7.2 MD-S100)
Transition Control Group

The Transition Control Group is where all PGM, PST, Key, and DSK transitions are set up and performed. You select which buses you want to take to air during the next transition, as well as how you want the transition to be performed.

Transition Control Group Overview

This section includes descriptions of the Transition Control Group of the Synergy 100 MD control panel.

- **Fader Section**
  - The Fader handle is used to perform manual transitions. The “type” of transition is based on the transition button that is selected in the Transition Type Section. The Fader performs one complete transition when it is moved from one limit to the other.
  
  The Transition Progress Bar located to the left of the Fader indicates the direction of Fader travel during a transition. As the transition progresses, the LED segments of the bar will illuminate. For full or partial transitions (when the Fader is paused part-way through), the unlit portion of the bar indicates the direction that the Fader must be moved in order to complete the transition.

  **Note**
  - It does not matter which limit you start or end the transition on, as long as you move the fader from one limit to the other, one full transition will be performed and the crosspoint selections on the PGM and PST buses will flip-flop.

- **Transition Parameter Section**
  - The buttons in the Transition Parameter Section allow you to set the Transition Limit and Preset Black functions for the next transition.

  **Note**
  - If you have the MultiDSK option, the TRANS LIMIT and PST BLACK buttons will be DSK4 DISS and DSK5 DISS, respectively. The Transition Limit or PST Black features will be disabled.

  - The TRANS LIMIT button allows you to hold a transition at a selected position, between the two Fader end limits. The transition can then either be reversed,
manually continued, or cut to the end. Refer to the section “Performing a Transition Limit Effect” on page 5–12 for details. If the MultiDSK option is enabled, the TRANS LIMIT button is re-tasked as DSK4 DISS.

• The PST BLACK button prepares a special two-stage transition that sets the PST bus to Black for the first transition and then returns the crosspoint selections to their original selections for the next transition. Refer to the section “Performing a Preset Black Transition” on page 5–14 for details.

3. Fade To Black Button

• The FADE TO BLACK button will initiate a Fade to Black transition, or return the switcher from a Fade to Black transition.

4. DSK Transition Section

The two buttons in the DSK Transition Section are used to initiate a transition of the Downstream Keyer.

• The DSK CUT button performs a cut of the Downstream Keyer, either taking it instantly on-air or off-air.

• The DSK DISS button performs a dissolve-type Auto Transition of the Downstream Keyer, taking it either on-air or off-air with a dissolve. The rate of the dissolve is set in the System Control Group. Refer to the section “Changing Auto Transition Rates” on page 5–9 for more information.

5. Automatic Transition Buttons

• The CUT button performs a cut of the source selected in the Next Transition Section. For example, if the BKGD button is selected, indicating a Background transition is to be run, the transition is performed between the PST and PGM buses, taking the source selected on the PST bus instantly on-air. The PGM and PST buses flip-flop during the cut. Refer to the section “Performing Cuts” on page 5–10 for more information.

• The AUTO TRANS button performs a transition of the source selected in the Next Transition Section. The type of transition that is performed is selected in the Transition Type Section. Refer to the section “Performing Auto Transitions” on page 5–8 for more information.

6. Transition Type Section

The buttons in the Transition Type Section allow you to choose the type of transition to perform during the next transition.

• The DISS button selects a dissolve as the transition type. When a dissolve is performed, the video signal on the PST bus gradually mixes into the video signal on the PGM bus. At the end of the transition, the PST video signal completely replaces the PGM video signal and the buses flip-flop.

The DISS button is mutually exclusive with the WIPE and DVE buttons. Refer to section “Performing Dissolves” on page 5–11 for more information.
The **WIPE** button selects a wipe as the transition type. When a wipe is performed, the video signal on the **PST** bus gradually replaces the video signal on the **PGM** bus using a wipe pattern chosen from the **Effects Control Group**. At the end of the transition the **PST** video signal completely replaces **PGM** video signal and the buses flip-flop.

The **WIPE** button is mutually exclusive with the **DISS** and **DVE** buttons. Refer to the section “Using Wipes” on page 6–6 for more information.

- The **DVE** button assigns the next transition to the primary DVE.

### 7. Next Transition Section

The **Next Transition Section** includes three buttons that allow you to select the combination of buses that will be included in the *next transition*.

- The **BKGD** button tells the switcher to include a **PGM/PST** transition during the next transition. The source selected on the **PST** bus will be selected on the **PGM** bus and taken on-air. Similarly, the source selected on the **PGM** bus will be selected on the **PST** bus and taken off-air.

- The **KEY1** button tells the switcher to include **Key 1** during the next transition as follows:
  - If the **Key 1** is currently *off-air*, the next transition will take **Key 1** on-air.
  - If the **Key 1** is currently *on-air*, the next transition will take **Key 1** off-air.

- The **KEY2** button tells the switcher to include **Key 2** during the next transition as follows:
  - If the **Key 2** is currently *off-air*, the next transition will take **Key 2** on-air.
  - If the **Key 2** is currently *on-air*, the next transition will take **Key 2** off-air.

Refer to the section below for more information on performing a transition.
Working with Next Transitions

The **Next Transition Section** consists of three buttons that allow you to select the combination of buses that will be included in the *next transition*. The section also includes two **ON AIR** indicators that show the state of the two keys.

Transition Control Group — Next Transition Section

The **BKGD**, **KEY1**, and **KEY2** buttons are selected to define what you want to take on or off-air during the next transition. They can be selected in any combination, depending on the **Transition Type** you have selected and the **Key Type** you have selected for each key. Refer to the section “**Example Transitions**” on page 5–5 for more information on working with next transitions.

Note

A **MultiDSK4** and **MultiDSK5** transition can only be performed using the **DSK4 DISS** and **DSK5 DISS** buttons. Refer to the section **“Transition Control Group Overview”** on page 5–2 for details.

Example Transitions

The buttons that are selected in the Next Transition Section tell the switcher what to take on or off-air during the next transition. The following example runs through a series of transitions showing you how to combine Background and Key transitions:

Note

This example focuses on the Next Transition Section only. Although you can select crosspoint sources for the PGM, PST, and Key buses, the appearance of what you take to air may not be as expected due to the video flow rules. Refer to the section **“Introduction to Keying”** on page 7–2 for more information on setting up keys and how they will appear.

1. In the default state the **BKGD** button is selected.

![Transition Diagram]

Performing a transition at this point will transition the **PGM** and **PST** buses only.

2. Press the **KEY2** button. Notice that the **BKGD** button is no longer lit.

![Transition Diagram]
3. Press the **AUTO TRANS** button to perform a transition.

   The resulting transition will take **Key 2** on-air, and the **ON AIR** indicator below the **KEY2** button will be lit.

4. Simultaneously press the **BKGD** and **KEY1** buttons. Both buttons will now be lit.

5. Press the **CUT** button to perform a transition.

   The resulting transition will take **Key 1** on-air, as well as perform a flip-flop of the **PGM/PST** buses. Notice that the **ON AIR** indicator below the **KEY1** button will be lit, and the **ON AIR** indicator below the **KEY2** button has not changed.

6. Press the **KEY2** button.

7. Move the **Fader Arm** from one limit to the other to perform a transition.

   The resulting transition will take **Key 2** off-air and the **ON AIR** indicator below the **KEY2** button will no longer be lit.

8. Simultaneously press the **BKGD**, **KEY1**, and **KEY2** buttons. All three buttons will now be lit.
9. Press the AUTO TRANS button to perform a transition. Notice that both ON AIR indicators will be lit as the switcher transitions Key 1 and Key 2.

The resulting transition will take Key 1 off-air, Key 2 on-air, and perform a flip-flop of the PGM/PST buses. Notice that although we transitioned both keys, because Key 1 was on-air and Key 2 was off-air, the transition took Key 1 off-air and Key 2 on-air.

This completes the example transitions exercise. During this example we learned that you can perform different automatic or manual transitions on multiple sources. We also learned that a transition of multiple keys can produce different results, depending on whether the keys were on-air or not. Refer to the section “Introduction to Keying” on page 7–2 for more information on using keys.

Operating Tip

The preview monitor output will show you the next scene. For example, if a key is currently on-air and the desired key button is lit, the preview monitor will show the key off.
Performing Transitions

This section includes information on performing auto transitions, manual transitions, cuts, dissolves, a transition limit effect, a Transition Preview, and a Preset Black transition. Information is also provided for preparing and running a transition.

Eight Steps to a Flawless Transition

The following steps will help you prepare and run a transition of either the PGM/PST buses, or any of the Keys:

1. Ensure that you have a Preview monitor connected.
2. Look at your Program monitor and determine which video elements you want to change — the background, Effects Keys, or a combination of the elements.
3. Press the desired “next transition” button(s).
4. Look at your Preview monitor and confirm that the monitor shows the desired video elements in the desired states (e.g., keys on, keys off, proper background video selected).
5. If one of the key elements is in the wrong state, press its associated “next transition” button and re-confirm the new composite image on Preview.
6. If you are bringing on a new key, ensure that the correct key source is selected and that it appears properly on Preview. If required, adjust the key source accordingly.
7. If the background image is wrong, select the correct image on the PST bus — or change the state of the BKGD button.
8. Once you have confirmed that the next image is correct on Preview, perform the transition — either manually with the Fader, or automatically using CUT or AUTO TRANS. Remember that the “next transition” buttons stay lit after the transition is complete.

Performing Auto Transitions

The AUTO TRANS button is used to run an automatic, timed, transition between the selected Preview and Program video signals. The following rules apply to Auto Transitions:

- Auto Transition will perform a steady, timed transition from one video source to another.
- Once started, an Auto Transition cannot be aborted back to the original video signal.
- An Auto Transition can be completed by either pressing the CUT button, or moving the fader from one limit to the other.
- If the fader is moved during an Auto Transition, the transition will pause until one of the following is done:
  - The fader is moved to the opposite limit to complete the transition.
  - The fader is returned to the original limit without having taken control of the transition and the AUTO TRANS button is pressed again.
  - The CUT button is pressed.

Note

The AUTO TRANS button will remain lit until the transition has been completed, or the fader takes control of the transition.
You can not initiate an Auto Transition or a Cut in the Transition Control group if the Fader is off its upper or lower limit.

### Changing Auto Transition Rates

The rate at which an Auto Transition is run is set from the System Control Group. This value is in video frames and varies in time according to the video format you are using. If you are operating at 60 Hz, a single video frame is 1/30th of a second, whereas, at 50 Hz, a single video frame is 1/25th of a second. If you are using film, a video frame is 1/24th of a second.

Note that Transition Rates for MultiDSKs can only be set through the menu system. Refer to the section “Setting MultiDSK Sources and Transition Rates” on page 7–35 for more information.

Use the following procedure to set the Auto Transition Rate:

1. Press the right SEL button repeatedly until AUTO is displayed in the Mode area. If you want to adjust the Fade to Black rate, you would display FADE in the Mode area, and for DSK Dissolve you would display DSK. The rest of the procedure is the same.

2. Use the 100, 10 and 1 buttons to enter the desired Auto Transition rate, in frames, between 1 and 999. The new rate is automatically updated and appears in the display.

Note

There is no way to cancel or undo your changes. If you do not want to keep your changes, you will have to follow the procedure to set the original rate again.

Operating Tip

If you press and hold one of the buttons, that value will reset back to the beginning.

This completes the procedure for setting the Auto Transition Rate. The switcher will use this rate for the next Auto Transition that is run.
Performing Manual Transitions

Use the following procedure to perform a manual transition:

1. Ensure that your PGM bus, PST bus, and keys are set up as desired.
2. In the Next Transition Section, select BKGD, KEY1, or KEY2, or any combination thereof as the next transition.
3. In the Transition Type Section, select the desired transition type — dissolve, wipe, or DVE effect.
4. Move the Fader from its current limit to the opposite limit. The speed at which you move the Fader determines the manual transition rate.
   • Remember that during a transition, the Transition Progress Bar LED segments illuminate as the Fader travels, with the unlit portion signifying the direction the Fader must be moved in order to complete the transition.

This completes the procedure for performing a manual transition.

Performing Cuts

A “background cut” is an instant switch between the PGM and PST buses. You can also perform a background cut simply by switching inputs on the PGM bus itself. This type of cut does not allow you to preview. Although we have used BKGD transitions between the PGM and PST buses as examples in the following procedure, remember that all types of transitions operate in the same manner, regardless of the Next Transition buttons selected.

Use the following procedure to perform a cut:

1. Select an input on the PGM bus.
2. Select a different input on the PST bus.
3. In the Next Transition Section, select BKGD as the next transition. The figure below illustrates a sample setup and the associated monitor outputs — before the cut.

Note: When the fader is off a limit, all buttons in the Transition Control group are disabled.

Note: If you double press a crosspoint button assigned to a Global-Store channel, the Global-Store Menu for that particular channel is displayed. You can use the menu to select an image and take it to air.
4. Press **CUT**. The inputs selected on the **PGM** and **PST** buses instantly exchange and the buses flip-flop. The figure below illustrates the MLE and monitor setup after the cut.

![Sample Setup – After a Cut](image)

5. Press **CUT** again to repeat the process and restore the original background.

This completes the procedure for performing a cut.

**Performing Dissolves**

In a “background dissolve” transition, the **PGM** bus video and **PST** bus video signals are gradually mixed together, until the **PST** bus video completely replaces the **PGM** bus video. Refer to the section “Using Wipes” on page 6–6 for complete instructions on performing wipe transitions.

Although we have used **BKGD** transitions between the **PGM** and **PST** buses as examples in the following procedure, remember that all types of transitions operate in the same manner, regardless of the **Next Transition** buttons selected.

Use the following procedure to perform a dissolve:

1. Select an input on the **PGM** bus.
2. Select a different input on the **PST** bus.
3. In the **Next Transition Section**, select **BKGD** as the next transition. The figure below illustrates a sample setup and the associated monitor outputs — before the dissolve.

![Sample Setup – Before the Dissolve](image)
4. In the **Transition Type Section**, press **DISS**.

5. To perform a manual transition, move the **Fader** from limit to limit. To perform an auto transition, press the **AUTO TRANS** button. During either transition, the **PST** bus video signal gradually mixes into the **PGM** signal, as shown below.

![Sample Setup – Performing a Transition](image1)

**Sample Setup – Performing a Transition**

At the end of the transition, the **PST** video completely replaces the **PGM** video and the buses flip-flop. The figure below illustrates the MLE and monitor setup *after* the dissolve.

![Sample Setup – After the Dissolve](image2)

**Sample Setup – After the Dissolve**

**Note**

If a *very short* auto transition rate is selected (typically five frames or less), this may appear the same as a cut. This type of transition is often called a “soft cut”.

This completes the procedure for performing a dissolve.

**Performing a Transition Limit Effect**

The **TRANS LIMIT** button in the **Transition Control Group** allows you to stop a transition at a position in between the two absolute **Fader** limits.

**Note**

If you have the MultiDSK option installed, refer to the section “**MultiDSK Operation**” on page 7–35 for information on performing transitions.

Use the following procedure to perform a transition limit effect:

1. Ensure the **Fader** is at an upper or lower limit and note the limit that you choose. The **Fader** must be returned to this limit in a subsequent step.
2. Select a dissolve or a wipe as your next transition.

3. Move the **Fader** and manually set the transition to the desired position.
   - In the case of a dissolve, visually set the desired mix (superimposition) between Program and Preset.
   - In the case of a wipe, visually set the desired *split screen* position between Program and Preset.

4. Leave the **Fader** at its preset position and press **TRANS LIMIT**. The button lights *momentarily* and the fader position is stored.

5. Move the **Fader** back to the limit selected in step 1.

6. Press **TRANS LIMIT** to turn on the **Transition Limit** function. A single LED in the **Transition Progress Bar** flashes, corresponding to the manually set position in step 3.

7. Use the **AUTO TRANS** button to perform the transition. The transition moves to the limit that you selected in step 3 and stops.

8. There are two ways to continue the transition:
   - Leave the **TRANS LIMIT** button turned on. When you use the **AUTO TRANS** button again, the transition reverses — and returns to its starting point.
   - Turn off the **TRANS LIMIT** button. When you use the **Fader** or **AUTO TRANS** again, the transition continues to its end.

This completes the procedure for performing a transition limit effect.

### Performing a Transition Preview

The “transition preview mode” allows you to rehearse a complete preset-to-background transition without affecting the program output. When in this mode, the full transition occurs on **Preview**, leaving the **Program** output signal undisturbed. You can create, rehearse, and preview any transition. With the transition preview mode engaged, the **Fader** is effectively *disconnected* from program.

Use the following procedure to perform a **Transition Preview**:

1. Select the desired **Next Transition** button or buttons, depending on which video elements you want to change.

2. Press and hold the desired **Transition Type** button, and use the **Fader** or **AUTO TRANS** to preview the current effect. Make any modifications desired.

3. Once you are satisfied with the effect, release the **Transition Type** button. The preview monitor reverts back to its look-ahead preview mode.

4. Perform the transition on air. The program output shows the exact effect as previewed previously on the preview monitor using “transition preview mode”.

### Operating Tip

**Transition preview mode** is allows you to preview complete effects before taking them on-air.

### Note

If there is a transition in progress when the **Transition Type** button is released, the preview monitor output will not return to its look-ahead preview mode until the transition is complete.

This completes the procedure for performing a **Transition Preview**.
Performing a Preset Black Transition

The Preset Black function is a special two-stage transition that allows you to take the switcher to black (or any other desired source) with the first transition, and then proceed to the next transition previously indicated. This function is quite useful for dipping the switcher to black or transitioning to a commercial.

Pressing **PST BLACK** causes the **BLACK** crosspoint to be selected on the **PST** bus, replacing the currently selected **PST** source. The buttons in the **Next Transition Section** may change, depending on what is currently on air.

---

### Preset Black Overview

There are two stages to a Preset Black transition:

- **First transition**: When you press **PST BLACK**, the switcher presets a dissolve to black. An alternate transition type can be selected, if desired. If a key or a combination of keys are on, but their “next transition” buttons are **not** lit, the switcher automatically lights the button for you.

  The **first transition** dissolves the switcher to black and dissolves off all keys. The buttons in the **Next Transition Section** then change, presetting the switcher with the original preview scene. This scene now appears on the **Preview** monitor.

- **Second transition**: The **second transition** brings the switcher back up from black to the scene previously shown on **Preview** — regardless of the combination of background and key sources selected.

### Performing a Preset Black Transition

Use the following procedure to perform a Preset Black transition:

1. Press **PST BLACK**. The preview monitor will now show a black picture.

2. Perform a transition with the **Fader**, **AUTO TRANS**, or **CUT**. The program transitions to black. Note that when black is reached, the switcher presets the scene previous to the black picture, and displays it on **Preview**.

3. Perform a second transition using the **Fader**, **AUTO TRANS**, or **CUT**. The switcher transitions to the previous scene, at the end of which the **PST BLACK** light turns off.

---

**Operating Tip**

After Step 1, a different source other than black can be selected on **PST**. This would allow you to dip to **COLOR BKGD** (white, for example), for a creative “flash-frame” transition. In addition, **BLACK** can be permanently overridden by holding down the **PST BLACK** button while selecting the desired source on the **PST** bus.

---

This completes the procedure for performing a Preset Black transition.
Pattern and Effects Control

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information and instructions for using the Effects Control Group of the switcher. The following topics are discussed:

- Effects Control Groups
- Effects Control Modes
- Wipes
- Using Wipes
- Selecting Wipes
- Mattes Group
Effects Control Groups

The two Effects Control Groups are assignable groups of controls that allow you to choose wipe patterns, and adjust wipe parameters and key modifiers. For example, by pressing WIPE, or FLY KEY, the groups are assigned to that specific function.

The top Effects Control Group includes a four-character display labeled “MODE”, and its associated SEL button. This display identifies which area or button on the switcher has control of the Effects Control Groups. In addition, the button of the controlling feature (for example, WIPE or FLY KEY) will illuminate green, instead of yellow.

The following figure illustrates the Effects Control Groups on the Synergy 100 MD control panel:

Effects Control Modes

- The SEL button in the Effects Control Group allows you to cycle through several “modes”, depending on the area or button which currently has control of the Effects Control Groups. The modes displayed are linked to the area or button selected, as outlined in the table on the following page.

In addition, by holding down the SEL button and pressing one of the buttons listed in the following table, you can change the button that has control without having to toggle it on and off.

Note

The Squeeze & Tease WARP MD, and Dual Border Generator options are not available at this time.
**Effects Control Mode Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Button Selected</th>
<th>Features Controlled</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FLY1</td>
<td>FLY KEY in Effects Keyer, Key 1 (*1) (*3)</td>
<td>Size, aspect ratio, and position of flown key in Keyer 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLY2</td>
<td>FLY KEY in Effects Keyer, Key 2 (*1) (*3)</td>
<td>Size, aspect ratio, and position of flown key in Keyer 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP1</td>
<td>MASK when a Squeeze &amp; Tease MD Box is active in Effects Keyer, Key 1</td>
<td>Cropping all edges of the video in a Squeeze &amp; Tease MD Box on Key 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP2</td>
<td>MASK when a Squeeze &amp; Tease MD Box is active in Effects Keyer, Key 2</td>
<td>Cropping all edges of the video in a Squeeze &amp; Tease MD Box on Key 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSK1</td>
<td>MASK in the Effects Keyer, Key 1 (*2)</td>
<td>Masking areas of a Self, Auto Select, or UltraChrome Chroma key on Key 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSK2</td>
<td>MASK in the Effects Keyer, Key 2 (*2)</td>
<td>Masking areas of a Self, Auto Select, or UltraChrome Chroma key on Key 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSKd</td>
<td>MASK in the Downstream Keyer Group</td>
<td>Masking areas of a Self or Auto Select key in the Downstream Keyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEM “#”</td>
<td>MEM in the Effects Control Group</td>
<td>Access to the Memory Store and Recall features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIPE</td>
<td>WIPE in the Transition Control Group</td>
<td>All Wipe controls, including pattern selection and modifiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP1</td>
<td>PST PATT (with FLY KEY off) in Effects Keyer, Key 1</td>
<td>All modifiers for the Preset Pattern key type on Key 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP2</td>
<td>PST PATT (with FLY KEY off) in Effects Keyer, Key 2</td>
<td>All modifiers for the Preset Pattern key type on Key 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVE</td>
<td>DVE in the Transition Control Group</td>
<td>Pattern selection and wipe direction for the Squeeze &amp; Tease MD wipes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BORD</td>
<td>BORD, SHDW, or OUTL in the Downstream Keyer Group</td>
<td>All modifiers (softness, size, etc.) for the optional border generator on the DSK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACK1</td>
<td>CHROMA KEY in Effects Keyer, Key 1</td>
<td>The Auto Chroma Key feature when setting up an UltraChrome Chroma Key on Key 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACK2</td>
<td>CHROMA KEY in Effects Keyer, Key 2</td>
<td>The Auto Chroma Key feature when setting up an UltraChrome Chroma Key on Key 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>*see next column</td>
<td>If any of the above features have control, turning them off will set the mode to NONE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIDE and SHOW</td>
<td>SEL to the left of the “Mode” display toggles between the two modes. (*4)</td>
<td>When in any Squeeze &amp; Tease MD menu, sections of the menu can be hidden. If the mode is set to “HIDE”, only the currently selected item, and its corresponding data values will remain displayed. “SHOW” displays the entire S&amp;T MD menu and all data values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

(*1) Selecting PST PATT in the keyer automatically turns on the FLY KEY.

(*2) Except when the key type is a Squeeze & Tease MD Box.

(*3) If you have the Squeeze & Tease WARP MD option installed, the key can also be rotated.

(*4) Only valid when in the S&T MD Menu.
Wipes

The Effects Control Groups also include two pattern generators:

- **Pattern Generator 1** is shared by the Wipe Generator and the Preset Pattern Generator for KEY1 of the Effects Keyers. This pattern generator is full-featured — all wipe patterns are available.

  ![Note](image)

  The Star and Heart patterns and the Matrix Wipes are currently not implemented.

- **Pattern Generator 2** is used by the Preset Pattern Generator for KEY2 of the Effects Keyers. This generator is restricted to the Classic wipe patterns, minus the circle, and the Rotary wipe patterns. Matrix wipes are not available.

  ![Note](image)

  Because Pattern Generator 1 is shared, you cannot select a WIPE transition if PST PATT is selected on Keyer 1. Similarly, if WIPE is enabled and you select a PST PATT key type in Keyer 1, the WIPE button turns off and the transition type reverts to DISS.

The top Effects Control Group includes 10 buttons which display 10 “classic” wipes. In addition, each button provides access to any of the more than 60 “user” wipes available.

To select a wipe, press WIPE in the Transition Control Group and select the desired pattern button. Once selected, the pattern can be modified and used on air. A single press of a button will illuminate its LED, and select the wipe as pictured. If you double-press the button, the LED will flash, indicating “user wipe mode”, and you will be able to choose any of the more than sixty wipes available.

Also included in the top Effects Control Group are the following two buttons:

- **The REV/LEARN** button controls the direction of the wipe. Three choices of wipe directions are available:
  
  ~ The default state of the REV/LEARN button is off. The wipe will proceed in the normal fashion, with the new picture being revealed from the black area (as shown on the pattern button) to the white area. The button’s LED will not be lit.
  
  ~ Press REV/LEARN to set the direction of the wipe to reverse. The new picture is revealed from the white area to the black area. The button’s LED will be on.
  
  ~ Double-press REV/LEARN to set the direction of the wipe to “flip-flop”. Wipe direction is normal for the first transition, reverse for the second, then normal for the third, etc. The button’s LED will be flashing.

- **The CNTR/EFF D** button is used to return borders, wipe positions, masks, and cropping features to their default state or position. In addition, it is used to default flying keys, including Squeeze & Tease boxes, to full screen. When recalling memories, this button enables you to perform an “effects dissolve” between two switcher setups.
The lower Effects Control Group provides two buttons and three “end-stop” knobs that modify the selected pattern.

**Important**

Because the electrical position of an End-stop Knob can be overwritten by recalling a memory register, the electrical knob position may not match the knob’s current physical position. In this case, the knob can still be adjusted but you may not have the full adjustment range available.

**Operating Tip**

To fully re-synchronize the physical-to-electrical position of an End-stop Knob, turn the knob fully clockwise, then fully counter-clockwise. Full-range adjustments can now be made.

- The **BORDER** knob allows you to adjust pattern borders, from no border to full-screen borders on all wipe patterns, with the exception of pattern number 111, which does not accept a border. Refer to the section “Selecting Wipes” on page 6–7 for information on how to access additional patterns.
  - Turning the knob clockwise increases border width.
  - Turning the knob counter-clockwise decreases border width.

- The **SOFT** knob allows you to adjust pattern edge softness from hard-edge to full soft-edge on all patterns, with the exception of pattern number 111, which does not allow edge softness. Refer to the section “Selecting Wipes” on page 6–7 for information on how to access additional patterns.
  - Turning the knob clockwise increases edge softness.
  - Turning the knob counter-clockwise decreases edge softness.

- When the **ASPECT** button is lit, the adjacent knob can be used to adjust the aspect ratio of selected patterns.
  - Turning the knob clockwise increases the pattern’s vertical aspect ratio, and, at the same time, reduces the horizontal aspect ratio.
  - Turning the knob counter-clockwise increases the pattern’s horizontal aspect ratio, and, at the same time, reduces the vertical aspect ratio.

- The **ASPECT** button enables the use of the adjacent knob.
  - When the button is on, patterns with both horizontal and vertical angles to their edges can have their aspect ratios adjusted. Circles can be adjusted into ovals, squares into rectangles, etc.
  - When the button is off, all aspect ratio adjustment is removed and the pattern returns to its default shape.

Note the following points regarding the **ASPECT** button:

- If you adjust the aspect ratio of one pattern, then select another pattern that can *not* have its aspect adjusted, the **ASPECT** light will stay on until it is turned off manually by pressing the button.

- The **ROTATE** button enables the use of the positioner as a wipe pattern modifier.
  - When the button is on, certain patterns can be rotated a full 360 degrees.
  - When the button is off, all rotation is removed and the pattern returns to its default position.
Using Wipes

In a “background wipe” transition, the **PGM** bus video is gradually replaced with the **PST** bus video according to a wipe pattern pre-selected in the **Effects Control Group**.

Use the following procedure to perform a wipe:

1. Select an input on the **PGM** bus.
2. Select a different input on the **PST** bus.
3. In the **Transition Control** Group, select **BKGD** as the next transition. The following figure illustrates a sample setup and the associated monitor outputs — before the wipe.

4. Press **WIPE**. This action causes the lamp on the **WIPE** button to illuminate yellow and automatically assigns the **Effects Control Groups** to the transition.
5. Press the pattern button for the desired wipe.
6. Choose the direction for the wipe. Select between normal, reverse, or flip-flop by pressing or double-pressing the **REV/LEARN** button.
7. Turn the **BORDER** knob fully clockwise, then fully counterclockwise. For this first exercise, this ensures that there is no border.
8. To perform a manual transition, move the **Fader** from limit to limit. To perform an auto transition, press the **AUTO TRANS** button. During the transition, the **PST** bus video signal gradually replaces the **PGM** signal using the selected wipe, as the following figure illustrates.

At the end of the transition, the **PST** video completely replaces the **PGM** video and the buses flip-flop.
The following figure illustrates the MLE and monitor setup after the wipe.

![MLE and Monitor Setup – After the Wipe](image)

**Note**

Wipe borders can be modified to be any matte color. Refer to the section “Mattes Group” on page 6–10 for details.

## Selecting Wipes

The **WIPE** feature of your switcher allows you to select from over 60 wipes, including those that are normally hidden from view on the panel.

Use the following procedure to select a **Wipe**:

1. In the **Transition Control Group**, press **WIPE**. The lamp on the button will illuminate green.

2. To choose one of the 10 patterns as shown in the **Effects Control Group**, press the desired button.

3. To access the additional user wipe patterns, double press any of the pattern buttons. The selected LED will flash, and the current “extended wipe” pattern number will be displayed in the **System Control Group**.

4. You will now have control of the **System Control Group**, and can use the **100**, **10**, and **1** buttons to select the patterns as desired. Refer to the following figure:
The first (hundreds) digit in the display represents the “class” of wipe. You can choose between the following classes of wipes:

- **Class 0 Classic Wipes** — Refer to the section “Classic Wipes” on page 6–8 for a list of the available wipes.
- **Class 1 Rotary Wipes** — Refer to the section “Rotary Wipes” on page 6–9 for a list of the available wipes.
- **Class 3 Rotary Wipes** — Refer to the section “Rotary Wipes” on page 6–9 for a list of the available wipes.
- **Class 4 Rotary Wipes** — Refer to the section “Rotary Wipes” on page 6–9 for a list of the available wipes.

The second two digits represent the number of the wipe.

5. Use the **100** button below the display to scroll through the classes. The **10** and **1** buttons are used to scroll through the wipe pattern numbers, represented by the last two (tens and units) digits in the display. Refer to the following sections for the available wipe patterns.

This completes the procedure for selecting a wipe.

**Classic Wipes**

The following figure illustrates the available “Classic” Wipes – Class 0.

![Classic Wipes – Class 0 Diagram]
Rotary Wipes

The following figure illustrates the available “Rotary” Wipes – Class 1.

Matrix Wipes

Note

Matrix Wipes (Class 2) are unavailable at this time.

The following figure illustrates the available “Matrix” Wipes – Class 2.

Special Wipes

Note

Special Wipes (Class 3) are unavailable at this time.

The following figure illustrates the available “Special” Wipes – Class 3.

Wipe number 300 is the special animated “fire” wipe, and wipe number 301 is a “plasma” wipe.
The Mattes Groups provides a set of assignable controls that allow you to select specific matte generators and adjust colors for wipe patterns, borders, the color background, and matte fills. The Mattes Group is assigned to a specific function by pressing a PST PATT, WIPE, COLOR BKGD, BORD or MATTE FILL button.

The following figure illustrates the Mattes Groups:

![Mattes Groups Diagram]

1. Matte Color Knobs

The three Matte Color Knobs allow you to adjust the color of the selected matte generator. Each knob is an “end-stop” knob. Refer to the section “Knobs” on page 4–12 for additional information on end-stop knobs.

- Rotate the HUE knob to change the color of the selected matte generator. A full 360 degrees of hue adjustment is provided.

- Rotate the SAT knob to change the color saturation of the selected matte generator. Saturation can be adjusted from 0 (monochrome or no saturation) to 100 percent — full color saturation.
• Rotate the **LUM** knob to change the luminance of the selected matte generator. Luminance can be adjusted from 0 (minimum brightness, or black) to 100 percent (maximum brightness, or white).

2. **Matte Destination Section**

The **SEL** button in the **Matte Destination Section** allows you to select one of five standard matte generators. Each generator is capable of generating one color. The generators are selected automatically (as outlined below) or they can be selected manually.

• Press **SEL** in the **Mattes Group** and scroll through the options until **BKGD** appears in the display. This matte generator is automatically selected when the **COLOR BKGD** buttons on the bus rows are pressed.

  When **BKGD** is selected, you can adjust the selected **COLOR BKGD** color using the three **Matte Color** knobs.

  **Note**

  The default **COLOR BKGD** color is blue.

• Press **SEL** in the **Mattes Group** and scroll through the options until **WIPE** appears in the display. This matte generator is automatically selected when the **WIPE** button in the **Transition Control Group** is pressed.

  When **WIPE** is selected, you can adjust the selected wipe border color using the three **Matte Color** knobs.

• Press **SEL** in the **Mattes Group** and scroll through the options until **DSK** appears in the display. This matte generator is used by the **Downstream Keyer**’s matte fill generator. It is automatically selected when any of the buttons in the **Downstream Keyer Group** are pressed.

  When **DSK** is selected, you can adjust the downstream key’s matte fill color using the three **Matte Color** knobs.

• Press **SEL** in the **Mattes Group** and scroll through the options until **KEY1** appears in the display. This matte generator is used by the **Effects Keyers** Key 1’s matte fill. It is automatically selected when the following buttons are pressed:

  ~ Any of the buttons relating to Key 1 in the **Effects Keyer Group** except **PST PATT**.

  When **KEY1** is selected, you can adjust the Effects Key 1’s matte fill color using the three **Matte Color** knobs.

  **Note**

  If **PST PATT** is selected in the **Effects Keyers Group**, you cannot select **MATTE FILL**.

• Press **SEL** in the **Mattes Group** and scroll through the options until **KEY2** appears in the display. This matte generator is used by the **Effects Keyers** Key 2’s matte fill. It is automatically selected when the following buttons are pressed:

  ~ Any of the buttons relating to Key 2 in the **Effects Keyer Group** except **PST PATT**.

  When **KEY2** is selected, you can adjust the Effects Key 2’s matte fill color using the three **Matte Color** knobs.
• Press SEL in the Mattes Group and scroll through the seven options until S&T1 appears in the display. This matte generator is used by the Squeeze & Tease MD option for adjusting the color of the border around a Squeeze & Tease box. It is automatically selected when the PST PATT button for Keyer 1 in the Effects Keyers Group is pressed.

When S&T1 is selected, you can adjust the Effects Key 1 Squeeze & Tease box’s border color using the three Matte Color knobs.

• Press SEL in the Mattes Group and scroll through the seven options until S&T2 appears in the display. This matte generator is used by the optional Squeeze & Tease MD option for adjusting the color of the border around a Squeeze & Tease box. It is automatically selected when the PST PATT button for Keyer 2 in the Effects Keyers Group is pressed.

When S&T2 is selected, you can adjust the Effects Key 2 Squeeze & Tease box’s border color using the three Matte Color knobs.
Keying

In This Chapter

This chapter provides instructions for using the Keys of your Synergy 100 MD Switcher. The following topics are discussed:

- Introduction to Keying
- Effects Keyers Group
- Downstream Keyer Group
- A Word About FlexiClean
- Performing a Self Key
- Performing an Auto Select Key
- Performing a Preset Pattern Key
- UltraChrome Chroma Keys
- Chroma Key Lighting Tips
- Split Keys
- MultiDSK Option
- Programming a Favorite CG
- Using Auto Transitions With Keys
Introduction to Keying

The “Keying” function allows you to insert (or electronically cut) portions of one scene into another or to place titles over background images. Two signals are required for a Key:

- The “Key” signal (also known as an Alpha signal) is used to electronically cut a hole in the background video.
- The “Fill” signal (also known as the Key Foreground) is used to electronically fill the hole created by the Key with video.

Visually, Keys appear as layers that can be built up to create the desired composite image. When working with Keys, the following rules apply:

- The MLE can generate two individual Keys that appear downstream of the Background. The priority of those Keys can be changed within the MLE itself.
- The MLE can generate one DSK (Downstream Key) that appears downstream of the Background and MLE Keys.

Refer to the section “Video Flow through the Switcher” on page 2-5 for additional information on basic video flow, MLE priority, and layering.

Key Group Basics

The Synergy 100 MD control panel includes two Key groups, the Effects Keyers Group and the Downstream Keyer Group. Please note the following basic rules regarding the two Key groups:

- For all Key types (except Preset Patterns) the Key Bus is used to select Key alpha and fill sources. Even though the buttons on the Key Bus are shared between the three Keyers, three sets of independent Keying electronics allow each Keyer to have its own Key and fill selections. For Preset Pattern Keys, the alpha signal is chosen by selecting a wipe pattern in the Effects Control Group.

Effects Keyers Group

The controls in the Effects Keyers Group allow you to choose Key types and a variety of Key modifiers.
1. **Key Type Section**

   The **Key Type Section** provides four buttons that select the type of Key that will be inserted over the background video.

   • **Press SELF KEY** to select a “Self” Key type, also known as a *luminance* Key. With a Self Key, the luminance (or brightness) values of the Key source itself (as selected on the **Key Bus**) are used to cut the hole.

   The Key hole is filled with the *same video signal* as the Key cutter. The Key hole can also be filled with color matte. Self Keys are often used to Key images from tape as there is no separate alpha available.

   • **Press AUTO SELECT** to choose an “Auto Select” Key type, also known as a *linear* Key.

   With Auto Select Keys, two signals are used to cut and fill the hole, a Key (alpha) signal and a fill (video) signal. These signals originate from devices such as character generators, still stores, DVEs, and graphics systems.

   When you choose an Auto Select Key and press a Key source (on the **Key Bus**), the switcher *automatically* selects both the alpha and fill signals. These signals were *linked* together during the installation procedure. Refer to Chapter 7, “BNC Configuration and Check” in the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* for details.

   • **Press CHROMA KEY** to select an UltraChrome™ Chroma Key type. With a Chroma Key, the hole is cut based on a selected color value (hue) rather than on a luminance value or an alpha signal. The color is then electronically removed and replaced with background video from another image.

   Similar to Self Keys, the Chroma Key hole is filled from the *same video source* as the Key cutter, except that the fill is composed of all colors that remain *after* the selected Chroma Key color is removed. The hole can also be filled with color matte. Chroma Keys are typically used to Key the weathercaster over a weather map.

   • **Press PST PATT** to select a “Preset Pattern” Key type. With a Preset Pattern Key, the hole is cut based on a pattern that you select in the **Effects Control Group**. The pattern (which acts just like the alpha signal for an *auto select* Key) is filled with video from the **Key Bus**.

   **Note**

   Unlike analog switchers that require separate RGB signals to perform a Chroma Key, with the *Synergy 100 MD* switcher, you can Chroma Key on *any source* that you select on the **Key Bus**.

   **Operating Tip**

   Pressing the button that is currently *lit* in the **Key Type Section** is a quick way to *activate* a Keyer for adjustment, when both Keyers are in use.

   **Note**

   If you have the *Squeeze & Tease MD Option* installed, this action will automatically turn on the **FLY KEY** button (in the Key Modifier Section), and apply a 3-D box effect to the Key.
2. Key Modifier Section

The buttons and knobs in the Key Modifier Section allow you to modify the Key that is currently selected.

- Press **KEY INVERT** to invert the polarity of the selected Key signal. For example, if a Self Key source has white letters on a black background, the white letters normally cut the hole. When **KEY INVERT** is pressed, the polarity of the signal is reversed and the **black background** cuts the hole. This function is often used to Key black text that is printed on a white background.

- Press **MASK** to activate the **Mask** controls. These controls allow you to selectively eliminate unwanted portions of a Key signal, similar to the “crop” function found on many DVEs. Using an adjustable box pattern, you can size and position the mask to hide the top, bottom, left or right edges of the Key.

In addition, the **REV/LEARN** button in the Effects Control Group can be used to invert the mask. All Key types except Preset Pattern Keys and **Squeeze & Tease MD** boxes can be masked.

- Press **FLY KEY** to enable or disable the **Squeeze & Tease MD** or **Squeeze & Tease MD WARP** function, allowing you to apply 3-D DVE effects to any of the four Key types. If the **Squeeze & Tease MD** option is installed, the **FLY KEY** button will light automatically when PST PATT is pressed, but must be pressed manually to fly a **CHROMA KEY**, **AUTO SELECT** or **SELF KEY**.

- Press **MATTE FILL** to fill the selected Key hole with a matte color, instead of the Key foreground video from the **Key Bus**. Use the controls in the **Mattes Group** to choose the hue, luminance, and saturation of the matte. Refer to the section “**Mattes Group**” on page 6-10 for more information on matte fill.

- Use the **CLIP** knob to adjust the luminance or threshold level of the Key. Only the areas of the source video that are **higher** than the setting of the threshold will cut a hole in the background video.

**Note**

All Key types except for **Squeeze & Tease MD** boxes can be inverted, except for **Squeeze & Tease MD** boxes.

**Note**

The **Squeeze & Tease MD** option has not yet been implemented. Contact Ross Video for more information.

Once enabled, you can control the size, horizontal and vertical position, and rotation of the flying Key. The **FLY KEY** button will not light if one of the options is not installed. If you have the **Squeeze & Tease MD** option installed, refer to the section “**Operational Overview**” on page 12-2 for instructions.

**Note**

All Key types except **Preset Pattern** Keys can be filled with Matte Color.

- The **HUE/TRANSP** knob has two functions.
  - With a Chroma Key, the **Hue/Transp** knob is used to select the color that you want to Key out, this is essentially the color to be replaced by the background video. The knob rotates through the full 360-degree color spectrum.
  - If you are setting up a **Self Key** or **Auto Select Key**, the **HUE/TRANSP** knob is used to adjust the transparency of the Key.

- Use the **CLIP** knob to adjust the luminance or threshold level of the Key. Only the areas of the source video that are **higher** than the setting of the threshold will cut a hole in the background video.
• Use the **GAIN** knob to adjust the gain of the Key. The control acts on all Keys and softens the Key edge, allowing you to adjust the way that the Key blends into the background.

**Note**

The **GAIN** function does not apply to **Squeeze & Tease MD Keys**.

### 3. Key Assignment Section

The button in the **Key Assignment Section** allows you to toggle control of all Key modifiers between the two Keys in the **Effects Keyers Group**.

• Toggle the **KEY2** button **On** (lit) to assign the **Effects Keyers Group** to Key 2. To assign the **Effects Keyers Group** back to Key 1, toggle the **KEY2** button **Off** (unlit).

**Downstream Keyer Group**

The following figure illustrates the **Downstream Keyer Group** of the **Synergy 100 MD control panel**:

**Note**

If you have the MultiDSK option installed, **MultiDSK4** and **MultiDSK5** are not controlled from the **Downstream Keyer Group**. Refer to the section “**MultiDSK Operation**” on page 7-35 for details.

![Synergy 100 Downstream Keyer Group](image)

1. **Key Type Section**

The **Key Type Section** provides two buttons that select the type of Key that will be inserted over background video.

• Press **SELF KEY** to select a “Self” Key type, also known as a **luminance Key**. With a Self Key, the luminance (or brightness) values of the Key source itself (as selected on the **Key Bus**) are used to cut the hole.

The Key hole is filled with the **same video signal** as the Key cutter or the hole can also be filled with color matte. Self Keys are often used to Key images from tape.

• Press **AUTO SELECT** to choose an “Auto Select” Key type, also known as a **linear Key**.
With Auto Select Keys, two signals are used to cut and fill the hole. There is a Key (alpha) signal and a fill (video) signal. These signals originate from devices such as character generators, still stores, DVEs, or graphics systems.

When you choose an Auto Select Key and press a Key source (on the Key Bus), the switcher automatically selects both the alpha and fill signals. These signals were linked together during the installation procedure. Refer to Chapter 7 “BNC Configuration and Check” of the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for information on assigning a Key alpha to a video input.

In addition to these buttons, there are two buttons used as hotkeys for your favorite Auto Select Keys originating from character generators, still stores, DVEs, or another desired source.

- Press CHAR GEN1 to select your most frequently used Auto Select Key, without having to hunt for it on the Key Bus. When pressed, the Key type and Key source are automatically selected. KEY MEM is turned On and Key modifiers are turned Off to provide a clean CG Key. Refer to the section “Programming a Favorite CG” on page 7-40 for more information.

- Press CHAR GEN2 to choose an alternate frequently used Auto Select Key. This button works in the same manner as CHAR GEN1.

2. Key Modifier Section

The buttons and knobs in the Key Modifier Section allow you to modify the Key that is currently selected.

- Press KEY INVERT to invert the polarity of the selected Key signal. For example, if a Self Key source has white letters on a black background, the white letters normally cut the hole. When KEY INVERT is pressed, the polarity of the signal is reversed and the black background cuts the hole. This function is often used to Key black text that is printed on a white background.

- The KEY MEM (memory) function applies to Auto Select Keys only. This function allows you to store and recall one set of clip and gain settings per crosspoint. The KEY MEM button turns on automatically when you press AUTO SELECT and choose an Auto Select Key source on the Key Bus. This function recalls the settings for the Key from memory. With the button lit, clip and gain settings are locked. If you toggle the KEY MEM button Off, the clip and gain setting will be unlocked, allowing you to make temporary adjustments to the settings of the linear Key. Toggling the button back On will restore the default settings for the Key source from memory.

Although the default clip and gain settings were set during the switcher installation process, you can also use the KEY MEM button to store new default values for the selected linear Key source. Refer to the section “Performing an Auto Select Key” on page 7-10 for more information.

- Press MASK to activate the Mask controls. These controls allow you to selectively eliminate unwanted portions of a Key signal, similar to the “crop” function found on many DVEs. Using an adjustable box pattern, you can size and position the mask to hide the top, bottom, left or right edges of the Key.

Note: All Key types can be inverted, except for Squeeze & Tease MD boxes.
In addition, the REV/LEARN button in the Effects Control Group can be used to invert the mask. Both the Self Key and Auto Select Key types can be masked.

- Press MATTE FILL to fill the selected Key hole with a matte color, instead of the Key foreground video from the Key Bus. Use the controls in the Mattes Group to choose the hue, luminance, and saturation of the matte. Refer to the section “Mattes Group” on page 6-10 for more information on matte fill.

3. Border Controls

- Press BORD to add a border behind the selected Key type. The border can appear as a simple surrounding border or as a detached shadow. Width, softness, color, and transparency are adjustable using the appropriate knobs in the Effects Control Group and Mattes Group.
- Press SHDW to add a drop shadow behind the selected Key type, with variable width, softness, color, and transparency.
- Press OUTL to add an outline around the selected Key type, with variable width, softness, color, and transparency. With OUTL selected, the Key fill is completely transparent.

4. DSK PV Button

- Press and hold the DSK PV button to preview your Downstream Keyer effect on the preview monitor. If the DSK1 is currently off-air, the preview monitor will show the downstream Keyer effect superimposed on top of the Program output. If DSK1 is currently on-air, the preview monitor will display the Program output without the DSK. This function is not available for the MultiDSK4 or MultiDSK5. Refer to the section “MultiDSK Operation” on page 7-35 for more information.

Note

The XFX Board Dual Border option is not yet implemented.

Note

Both Auto Select and Self Keys can be filled with Matte Color.

Note

The DSK PV button is active only as long as the button is held down. When released, the preview monitor once again displays the Preview output (based on the “Next Transition” buttons selected) and the button will no longer be lit.
A Word About FlexiClean

FlexiClean allows you to set up your outputs to provide you with a second “program” output that is derived from a different location in the video stream than the standard program output. This feature is most commonly used for bilingual and live-to-tape production such as a call-in show where the rebroadcast does not show the phone numbers.

If you have the MultiDSK (DSK4 and DSK5) option installed on a Synergy 100 MD, the FlexiClean output can be configured to pull the output from before each Key and DSK, independently, as illustrated below.

FlexiClean Modes — Program/Preset MLE with MultiDSK

Using Keys

This section includes detailed instructions for using Keys. Prior to proceeding, ensure that you have read the section “Introduction to Keying” on page 7-2 thoroughly.

### Performing a Self Key

A **Self Key** is one in which the luminance (or brightness) values of the Key source itself are used to cut the hole.

Use the following procedure to perform a Self Key in Key 1:

1. Select a background source on the **PGM** bus. This provides the background over which the Key will appear.
2. Press **KEY1** in the **Transition Control Group** to preview the Key. This step will also serve to assign the **Key** bus and **Effects Keyers Group** to **Key 1**.
3. Select a Key source on the **Key 1** bus.
4. Press **SELF KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
5. Adjust the Clip and Gain of the Key as follows:
   - Use the **CLIP** knob in the **Effects Keyers Group** to adjust the luminance of the Key. The lower the threshold setting, the more the Key is visible.
   - Use the **GAIN** knob in the **Effects Keyers Group** to adjust the softness of the edges of the Key.
6. Select any additional Key modifiers you want to use. You can select between the following:
   - **MATTE FILL** — Select this button to fill the hole cut by the clip and gain of the source with a matte color.
   - **KEY INVERT** — Select this button to invert the Key polarity of the hole cut by the clip and gain of the source.
   - **MASK** — Select this button to activate the mask feature and mask out a rectangular part of the source video.

---

**Note**

If you have the MultiDSK option installed, refer to the section “MultiDSK Operation” on page 7-35 for using Keys in MultiDSK4 and MultiDSK 5.

**Note**

This procedure will show you how to perform a **Self Key** in **Key 1**, the same procedure can be used to perform a **Self Key** in **Key 2** or **DSK 1**.

**Note**

If you select a different **Self Key** source, you will need to re-adjust the Clip and Gain of the source. However, each crosspoint will remember its own individual clip and gain setting.

**Operating Tip**

Press and hold the **SELF KEY** button and press the **CENTER** button to return the **Clip** and **Gain** values to the default settings.
Performing an Auto Select Key

An Auto Select (or “linear”) Key is one in which two signals are used to cut and fill the hole. These are a Key (alpha) signal and a fill (video) signal. These signals originate from devices such as character generators, still stores, DVEs, and graphics systems.

If you are setting up an Auto Select Key in the Effects Keyers Group, you can adjust the Clip and Gain as needed. In the Downstream Keyer Group you will have to toggle the KEY MEM button Off before you will be able to adjust the Clip and Gain as needed.

Use the following procedure to perform an Auto Select Key in Key 2:

1. Select a background source on the PGM bus. This provides the background over which the Key will appear.
2. Press KEY2 in the Transition Control Group to preview the Key. This step will also serve to assign the Key bus and the Effects Keyers Group to Key 2.
3. Select a Key source on the Key 2 bus.
5. Select any additional Key modifiers you want to use. You can select between the following:
   - MATTE FILL — Select this button to fill the hole cut by the alpha of the source with a matte color.
   - KEY INVERT — Select this button to invert the Key polarity of the hole cut by the alpha of the source.
   - MASK — Select this button to activate the mask feature and mask out a rectangular part of the source video (both alpha and fill).
   - Border Effects (in the Downstream Keyer only) — Select these effects to add borders, shadows and outlines to your Key.
   - FLY KEY — Select this option to activate the Squeeze & Tease MD option.
6. Perform a CUT, AUTO TRANS, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your Auto Select Key on-air.

This completes the procedure for performing an Auto Select Key in Key 2.

Storing New Clip and Gain Settings

If the KEY MEM button is off, you can adjust the clip and gain settings of the Key on a temporary basis. The following procedure re-locks the clip and gain values, and stores the new settings in memory.

**Important**

There is no undo function. If you re-store clip and gain, you cannot recall previous values unless you recall settings from memory. Refer to the section “Storing Memory Registers” on page 9-3 for information.
Use the following procedure to permanently store the new clip and gain settings:

1. Ensure that the **KEY MEM** button is toggled **Off**.
2. Adjust **Clip** and **Gain** for the desired appearance.

- **Operating Tip**: Press and hold the **AUTO SELECT** button and press the **CENTER** button to return the **Clip** and **Gain** values to the default settings.

3. Press and **hold** the **AUTO SELECT** button.
4. Press **KEY MEM**.
5. Release both buttons.

This completes the procedure for storing the new clip and gain settings.

### Performing a Preset Pattern Key

A **Preset Pattern** Key is one in which the hole is cut based on a wipe pattern that you select in the **Effects Control Group**. The pattern (which acts just like the alpha signal used with an **auto select** Key) is filled with video from the **Key Bus**.

- **Note**: You cannot perform a **Preset Pattern Key** in the **Downstream Keyer Group**.

There are a few rules that must be considered when applying a **PST PATT** Key, as follows:

- If you perform a Preset Pattern Key on **Key 1**, the pattern generator is **full-featured** (except matrix wipes) but it is shared with the **Wipe Generator**.
  
  ~ If you press **PST PATT** in **Key 1**, you cannot press **WIPE** in the **Transition Control Group**.
  
  ~ If **WIPE** is selected in the **Transition Control Group** and you press **PST PATT** in **Key 1**, the **WIPE** button is turned off and **DISS** is automatically lit.

- If you perform a Preset Pattern Key in **Key 2**, the pattern generator is **not shared**, but it is restricted to the first six columns of wipes.

- **Note**: Matrix wipes are not available.

Use the following procedure to perform a Preset Pattern Key in **Key 1**:

1. Select a background source on the **PGM** bus. This provides the background over which the Key will appear.
2. Press **KEY1** in the **Transition Control Group** to preview the Key. This step will also serve to assign the **Key bus** and **Effects Keyers Group** to **Key 1**.
3. Select a Key source on the **Key 1** bus.
4. Press **PST PATT** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
5. Select the desired pattern in the **Effects Control Group**.

- **Operating Tip**: You can adjust the **Clip** and **Gain** as needed by using the **CLIP** and **GAIN** knobs in the **Effects Keyers Group**. You can also adjust the size and location of the pattern using the Positioner.
6. Select any additional Key modifiers you want to use. You can select between the following:
   - **MATTE FILL** — You cannot Matte Fill a Preset Patter Key.
   - **KEY INVERT** — Select this button to invert the polarity of Key.
   - **MASK** — Select this button to activate the mask feature and mask out a rectangular part of the source video (both alpha and fill).
   - **FLY KEY** — Select this option to activate the Squeeze & Tease MD option.

7. Perform a **CUT, AUTO TRANS**, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your **Preset Pattern Key** on-air.

This completes the procedure for performing a Preset Pattern Key in Key 1.
UltraChrome Chroma Keys

This section provides instructions for performing an UltraChrome™ Chroma Key on a Synergy 100 MD switcher. An UltraChrome Chroma Keyer is available in each keyer, and can be used in either Key 1 or Key 2. A Chroma Key is one in which the hole is cut based on a color value (hue), rather than on a luminance value or an alpha signal. The color is electronically removed and replaced with background video from another image. You can UltraChrome on any source selected on the Key Bus.

The following topics are discussed in this section:

- Choosing an UltraChrome Operating Mode
- Performing an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode
- Performing an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode
- Chroma Key Lighting Tips

Choosing an UltraChrome Operating Mode

The UltraChrome Chroma Keyer operates in one of two modes: Basic or Advanced.

Basic Mode

Basic Mode allows you to define two areas of the image being keyed: a background and a foreground. The background is the part of the image that will be removed, allowing any underlying image to show through, while the foreground is any part of the image that will be kept. Basic Mode allows you to modify the colors used to define the background and foreground as well as some control over background “spill” onto your foreground subject and edge softness to help the foreground object blend into any underlying video. Beginning users and those who have simple Chroma Key needs should choose Basic Mode.

To create an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode, proceed to the section “Performing an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode” on page 7-14.

Advanced Mode

Advanced Mode allows much more control over the Chroma Keying process. Background areas can be defined as translucent areas and shadow areas, while transition areas are where the background and foreground areas meet. Advanced users and those with more demanding Chroma Key needs may use Advanced Mode. This mode allows you to control all aspects of the Chroma Keying process and gives you the ability to fine-tune properties such as shadows and transparency.

To create an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode, proceed to the section “Performing an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode” on page 7-19.
Performing an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode

The following topics are discussed in this section:

- Creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode
- Using the Color Map Preview in Basic Mode
- Adjusting an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode

Creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode

Use the following procedure to create an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode:

1. Select a background source on the PGM bus. This provides the background over which the Key will appear.
2. Press KEY1 in the Transition Control Group to preview the Key. This step will also serve to assign the Key bus and Effects Keyers Group to Key 1.
3. Select a Key source on the Key 1 bus.
4. Press CHROMA KEY in the Effects Keyers Group to display the UltraChrome Parameters Menu on the preview overlay.
5. Select Basic Mode as follows:
   - Press 0. Color Pick.
   - Key Mode — Use the Hue knob to select Basic.
6. Select a color to key out, or remove, as follows:
   - Press 0. Color Pick.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UltraChrome Parameters</th>
<th>0. Color Pick</th>
<th>5. Softness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Initialize Key</td>
<td>6. Color Map</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Background</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Foreground Range</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Spill Suppress</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color Pick</td>
<td>Key Mode: Basic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Color: Blue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

   UltraChrome Parameters — Color Pick Menu

- Color — Use the SAT knob to select the color to be removed as follows:
  - Blue — Select this option to have blue removed from the video signal.
  - Cyan — Select this option to have cyan removed from the video signal.
  - Green — Select this option to have green removed from the video signal.
  - Yellow — Select this option to have yellow removed from the video signal.
  - Red — Select this option to have red removed from the video signal.
  - Magenta — Select this option to have magenta removed from the video signal.
7. Press **1. Initialize Key** to preview the Chroma Key.

**Note**

Every time **1. Initialize Key** is pressed, the switcher will reset all the Chroma Key parameters to their optimal default values for the video.

8. Select any additional Key modifiers you want to use. You can select between the following:

- **MATTE FILL** — Select this button to fill the hole cut by the Chroma Key with a matte color.
- **KEY INVERT** — Select this button to invert the polarity of the Chroma Key.
- **MASK** — Select this button to activate the mask feature and mask out a rectangular part of the Chroma Key.
- **FLY KEY** — Select this option to activate the Squeeze & Tease MD option.

9. Perform a **CUT**, **AUTO TRANS**, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your **UltraChrome Chroma Key** on-air.

This completes the procedure for creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode.

**Using the Color Map Preview in Basic Mode**

Adjusting a Chroma Key can be difficult when looking at the actual video signals as some adjustments have very subtle effect on the image. Using a Color Map preview gives you a visual representation of the various parts of your Chroma Key and makes for easier adjustments. The Color Map preview uses the Preview monitor to show a representation of the different UltraChrome regions. The Preview monitor will display the representation in the foreground of the Preview, but not over top of the Preview Overlay, while the feature is set to **On**.

**Note**

The Color Map is not displayed on-air with the Chroma Key.

The Color Map Preview, when in Basic Mode, shows the three different colored regions that represent the elements that the UltraChrome Chroma Keyer breaks an image into. The following table summarizes this breakdown.

**Color Map Legend**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>UltraChrome Element</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black</td>
<td>Foreground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Spill Suppression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray</td>
<td>Background</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the following procedure to display the Color Map Preview in Basic Mode:

1. Create an UltraChrome Chroma Key as described in the section **“Creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode”** on page 7-14.
2. Ensure the **UltraChrome Parameters Menu** is displayed.
3. Press **6. Color Map** to toggle this feature **On** or **Off**.
   - **Off** — This is the default mode. When the Color Map is toggled **Off**, the Chroma Key is displayed on the Preview monitor without the Color Map feature.
• **On** — When the Color Map is toggled On, the three different colored regions that the UltraChrome Keyer breaks an image down to are displayed on the Preview monitor. This Color Map serves as an aid when adjusting all of the parameters of your Chroma Key. Refer to the table on page 7-15 for more details.

This completes the procedure for displaying the Color Map Preview in Basic Mode. Next you will adjust your Chroma Key in Basic Mode.

**Adjusting an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode**

Adjusting the values of a Chroma Key can be done at any time after you have initialized the Key. The following procedure assumes that you have already created and initialized the Key in Basic Mode and are attempting to improve the appearance of it.

An UltraChrome Chroma Key, when created in Basic Mode, enables you to adjust the following parameters:

- **Background** — Background elements are those areas in the source video that are the same color as the one you chose to key out.
- **Foreground** — Foreground elements are those pixels that are not within the Background ranges. This is the area with colors that will not be keyed out and will remain solid.
- **Spill Suppression** — Spill Suppression elements are those areas in the Foreground that have a noticeable tint of the Background color. This typically occurs around the edges of subjects as glow from the background blue or green-screen “spills” onto them. Adjusting this parameter will correct the amount of blue or green spill.
- **Edge Softness** — Edge Softness lets you apply varying degrees of softening to the foreground edges to help it blend in with the underlying background image.

You can use the knobs in the Mattes Group or the Positioner on the Synergy control panel to adjust the UltraChrome Chroma Key parameters as follows:

- Move the Positioner left or right (X-Axis) instead of the Hue knob
- Move the Positioner up or down (Y-Axis) instead of the SAT knob
- Move the Positioner clockwise or counter-clockwise (Z-Axis) instead of the LUM knob

Use the following procedure to adjust your UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode:

1. Create an UltraChrome Chroma Key as described in the section “Creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode” on page 7-14.
2. Ensure the UltraChrome Parameters Menu is displayed.
3. Press **2. Background** to display the Background Menu.

---

**Note**

Every time 1. Initialize Key is pressed, the switcher will reset all the Chroma Key parameters to their optimal default values for the video.
4. Adjust the Background of the UltraChrome Key as follows:
   - **Gain** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust the Background in terms of translucency as follows:
     ~ Increasing the Gain value causes the Background to appear more opaque. For example, less of the selected Background color is removed.
     ~ Decreasing the Gain value causes the Background to appear more transparent. For example, more of the selected Background color is removed.

5. Press **3. Foreground Range** to display the **Foreground Range Menu**.

6. Adjust the Foreground Range of the UltraChrome Key as follows:
   - **Clip** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust the range of saturation of the Foreground colors.
     ~ Increasing the clip value removes lower-saturated colors from the Foreground image, making the pixels more transparent.
     ~ Decreasing the clip value includes lower-saturated colors in the Foreground image, making the pixels less transparent.
   - **Hue** — Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the Foreground Range in terms of colors. This selects the central, or base, color for the Foreground.
     ~ Increasing the hue value moves counter-clockwise around the color wheel while selecting a base color.
Decreasing the hue value moves clockwise around the color wheel while selecting a base color.

You may wish to select a hue to set a base color to keep before using the other knobs to expand or contract the range of colors that will be kept in the foreground image.

- **Reject** — Use the LUM knob to include or reject adjacent hues to the base color.
  - Increasing the reject value decreases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in the Foreground.
  - Decreasing the reject value increases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in the Foreground.

**Operating Tip**

Adjusting the Hue values rotates the selection around the color wheel. These hues are included in the foreground.

Adjusting the Reject values expands and contracts the range of hues included in the Foreground.

7. Press 4. **Spill Suppress** to display the **UltraChrome Spill Suppress Menu**.

8. Adjust the pixels in the Foreground Range that have a noticeable tint of the Background color as follows:

- **Range** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust the range of the Foreground colors to be corrected for Background color spill.
  - Increasing the range value causes more of the Foreground colors to be corrected for Background color spill.
  - Decreasing the range value causes fewer of the Foreground colors to be corrected for Background color spill.

9. Press 5. **Softness** to display the **UltraChrome Edge Softness Menu**.
10. Add edge softening to the Foreground image as follows:
   • **Edge Softness** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust the amount of softness applied to the Foreground image.
     ~ Increasing the softness value increases the amount of softness applied to the Foreground edges.
     ~ Decreasing the softness value decreases the amount of softness applied to the Foreground image. A value of 0.0% turns off Edge Softening.

11. Select any additional Key modifiers you want to use. You can select between the following:
   • **MATTE FILL** — Select this button to fill the hole cut by the Chroma Key with a matte color.
   • **KEY INVERT** — Select this button to invert the polarity of the Chroma Key.
   • **MASK** — Select this button to activate the mask feature and mask out a rectangular part of the Chroma Key.
   • **FLY KEY** — Select this option to activate the **Squeeze & Tease MD** option.

12. Perform a **CUT**, **AUTO TRANS**, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your **UltraChrome Chroma Key** on-air.

This completes the procedure for creating and adjusting an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Basic Mode.

**Performing an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode**

An UltraChrome Chroma Key, when created in Advanced Mode, breaks the image into six elements, four of which determine, or partially determine, which part of the image is keyed out (removed). Those four elements are: Background, Shadows, Translucent Areas, and Transition Areas.

An UltraChrome Chroma Key, when created in Advanced Mode, enables you to adjust the following parameters:

• **Background** — Background elements are those areas in the source video that are the same color as the one you chose to key out. Note that the Shadow and Translucent Areas are completely contained within the Background Area.

• **Foreground** — Foreground elements are those areas in the selected base color. These areas will not be keyed out and will remain solid.

• **Shadow** — Shadow elements are those areas in the source video with colors that are within the Background range but with lower luminance values. You modify the Shadow
range to cover darker areas of the background, for example, where the foreground is casting a shadow on the background screen.

- **Translucent** — Translucent elements are those areas in the source video that are in the Background range but with higher luminance values than the Shadow range. You can control the upper-end of the Translucency range by selecting a wider hue-range to constrain the area. You can also control transparency of the Translucent Area.

- **Transition** — Transition elements are those areas in the source video with colors that are not within the Foreground, Translucency and Shadow ranges and are also not considered part of the Foreground area. These are typically the pixels near the edge of the Foreground where it blends into the background.

- **Spill Suppression** — Spill Suppression elements are those areas in the source video of the Foreground that have a noticeable tint of the Background color. This typically occurs around the edges of subjects as glow from the background blue or green-screen “spills” onto them.

The following topics are discussed in this section:

- Creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode
- Using the Color Map Preview in Advanced Mode
- Adjusting an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode
- Tips for Chroma Key Fine-Tuning in Advanced Mode

**Creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode**

Use the following procedure to create and adjust an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode:

1. Select a background source on the PGM bus. This provides the background over which the Key will appear.

2. Press **KEY1** in the **Transition Control Group** to preview the Key. This step will also serve to assign the **Key** bus and **Effects Keyers Group** to **Key 1**.

3. Select a Key source on the **Key 1** bus.

4. Press **CHROMA KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group** to display the UltraChrome Parameters Menu on the preview overlay.

5. Select Advanced Mode as follows:
   - Press **0. Color Pick**.
   - **Key Mode** — Use the **Hue** knob to select **Advanced**.

6. Press **0. Color Pick** to display the **Color Pick Menu**.

```
UltraChrome Parameters
0. Color Pick   5. Background Range
1. Initialize Key 6. Foreground Range
2. Shadow           7. Spill Suppress
3. Translucency   8. Softness and Luma
4. Transition      9. Color Map    Off

Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

UltraChrome Parameters — Color Pick Menu
```
7. Select the color to be removed as follows:
   - Press 0. Color Pick.
   - **Color** — Use the SAT knob to select the color you want to remove. You can select between the following:
     - **Blue** — Select this option to have blue removed from the video signal.
     - **Cyan** — Select this option to have cyan removed from the video signal.
     - **Green** — Select this option to have green removed from the video signal.
     - **Yellow** — Select this option to have yellow removed from the video signal.
     - **Red** — Select this option to have red removed from the video signal.
     - **Magenta** — Select this option to have magenta removed from the video signal.

8. Press 1. Initialize Key to preview the Chroma Key.

   **Note**  
   Every time 1. Initialize Key is pressed, the switcher will reset all the Chroma Key parameters to their optimal default values for the video.

9. Select any additional Key modifiers you want to use. You can select between the following:
   - **MATTE FILL** — Select this button to fill the hole cut by the Chroma Key with a matte color.
   - **KEY INVERT** — Select this button to invert the polarity of the Chroma Key.
   - **MASK** — Select this button to activate the mask feature and mask out a rectangular part of the Chroma Key.
   - **FLY KEY** — Select this option to activate the Squeeze & Tease MD option.

10. Perform a CUT, AUTO TRANS, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your UltraChrome Chroma Key on-air.

This completes the procedure for creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode.

### Using the Color Map Preview in Advanced Mode

Adjusting a Chroma Key can be difficult when looking at the actual video signals as some adjustments have very subtle effect on the image. Using a Color Map preview gives you a visual representation of the various parts of your Chroma Key and makes for easier adjustments. The Color Map preview uses the Preview monitor to show a color-coded representation of the different UltraChrome regions. The Preview monitor will display the colored representation in the foreground of the Preview, but not over top of the Preview Overlay, while the feature is set to On and the Chroma Key is on-air.

   **Note**  
   The Color Map is not displayed on-air with the Chroma Key.

The Color Map Preview, when in Basic Mode, shows the three different colored regions that represent the elements that the UltraChrome Chroma Keyer breaks an image into. The following table summarizes this breakdown.
Use the following procedure to display the Color Map Preview in Advanced Mode:

1. Create an UltraChrome Chroma Key as described in the section “Creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode” on page 7-20.
2. Ensure the UltraChrome Parameters Menu is displayed.
   - Off — This is the default mode. When the Color Map is toggled Off, the Chroma Key is displayed on the Preview monitor without the Color Map feature.
   - On — When the Color Map is toggled On, the different elements that the UltraChrome Keyer breaks an image down to are displayed as colored regions on the Preview monitor. This Color Map serves as an aid when adjusting all of the parameters of your Chroma Key. Refer to the above table for details.

This completes the procedure for display the Color Map Preview in Advanced Mode. Next you will adjust your UltraChrome Chroma Key.

**Adjusting an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode**

Adjusting the values of a Chroma Key can be done at any time after you have initialized the Key. The following procedure assumes that you have already created and initialized the Key in Advanced Mode and are attempting to improve the appearance of it.

You can use the knobs in the Mattes Group for adjusting UltraChrome Chroma Key parameters. You can also use the Positioner to adjust the UltraChrome parameters as follows:

- Move the Positioner left or right (X-Axis) instead of the Hue knob
- Move the Positioner up or down (Y-Axis) instead of the SAT knob
- Move the Positioner clockwise or counter-clockwise (Z-Axis) instead of the LUM knob

Use the following procedure to adjust an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode:

1. Create an UltraChrome Chroma Key as described in the section “Creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key in Advanced Mode” on page 7-20.
2. Ensure the UltraChrome Parameters Menu is displayed.
3. Press 2. Shadow to display the Shadow Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>UltraChrome Element</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Background and Shadow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Translucent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black</td>
<td>Foreground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Spill Suppression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray</td>
<td>Transition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
Every time 1. Initialize Key is pressed, the switcher will reset all the Chroma Key parameters to their optimal default values for the video.
4. Adjust the shadow properties that are considered shadows as follows:

- **Range** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust the range of values that a Background color can have to be considered a shadow.
  - Increasing the range value widens the Shadow Area by including lower-luminance Background colors. The increased range comes as a result of colors moving from the Translucent Area to the Shadow Area.
  - Decreasing the range value narrows the Shadow Area by excluding higher-luminance colors. These excluded colors move back into the Translucent Area.

- **Gain** — Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the strength of the shadows, making them darker or lighter.
  - Increasing the gain value creates darker shadows.
  - Decreasing the gain value creates lighter shadows.

5. Press **3. Translucency** to display the Translucency Menu.

---

**Operating Tip**

Shadow adjustments allow you to extract a shadow from the background. This would be the actual shadow that the foreground subject is casting onto the screen.

---

**Note**

If there are flaws and blemishes in the Chroma Key background, they will also appear as shadows. Normally, a superb set with careful lighting is required for natural Chroma Key shadows. Refer to the section “Chroma Key Lighting Tips” on page 7-30 for more information on lighting.
Translucency settings allow you to adjust the appearance of clear items such as eye-glass lenses.

6. Adjust the range of Translucent colors of the UltraChrome Key as follows:
   - **Range** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust the range of Translucent colors, as was initially determined by the Shadow Range.
     ~ Increasing the range value widens the Translucent Area by including more hues from the background range. Note that the lower-end of the luminance range is defined by the Shadow Range set in step 4.
     ~ Decreasing the range value narrows the Translucent Area by excluding hues.
   - **Gain** — Use the **SAT** knob to make the Translucent Areas more transparent or more opaque.
     ~ Increasing the gain value causes the Translucent colors to appear more opaque.
     ~ Decreasing the gain value causes the Translucent colors to appear more transparent.

7. Press **4. Transition** to display the **Transition Menu**.

   The Transition Area is the range of pixels that are left-over, such as those not in the Foreground, Shadow or Translucent areas. The Transition settings allow you to adjust the appearance of the Transition Area.

8. Adjust the appearance of Transition Area pixels as follows:
   - **Gain** — Use the **Hue** knob to make the Transition Area pixels more transparent or more opaque.
     ~ Increasing the gain value makes the Transition Area pixels more opaque.
     ~ Decreasing the gain value makes the Transition Area pixels more transparent.
9. Press **5. Background Range** to display the **Background Range Menu**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UltraChrome Parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Color Pick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Initialize Key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Shadow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Translucency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Transition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Background Range**  
Sat. range: 0.0%  
Positive hue: 0.0%  
Negative hue: 0.0%

Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

The Background area will typically need only very minor adjustment as most of the modification has been made by adjusting the Shadow and Translucent areas. However, changing this range may help expand or decrease these areas as they are completely contained in the Background range.

10. Adjust the range of hues and saturation levels that are included as part of the background as follows:

- **Sat. range** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust the range of saturation values used for background colors that are close to the primary color. The higher the value, the larger the range of saturation levels.
  - Increasing the saturation range value causes a wider range of color saturation to be included in the background, and therefore, keyed out.
  - Decreasing the saturation range value causes less of a color saturation range to be included in the background. For example, only color saturations close to the nominal value are included in the background.

- **Positive hue** — Use the **SAT** knob to expand the hues included in the background counter-clockwise around the color wheel.

- **Negative hue** — Use the **LUM** knob to expand the hues included in the background counter-clockwise around the color wheel.

11. Press **6. Foreground Range** to display the **Foreground Range Menu**.
12. Adjust the Foreground Range of the UltraChrome Key as follows:

- **Clip** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust the range of clipping of the Foreground colors.
  ~ Increasing the clip value removes lower-saturated colors from the Foreground image.
  ~ Decreasing the clip value includes lower-saturated colors in the Foreground image.

- **Hue** — Use the **SAT** knob to select the central, or base, color for the Foreground.
  ~ Increasing the hue value moves counter-clockwise around the color wheel while selecting a base color.
  ~ Decreasing the hue value moves clockwise around the color wheel while selecting a base color.

- **Reject** — Use the **LUM** knob to include or reject adjacent hues to the base.
  ~ Increasing the reject value decreases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in the Foreground.
  ~ Decreasing the reject value increases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in the Foreground.
13. Press **7. Spill Suppress** to display the **Spill Suppress Menu**.

The Spill Suppress feature enables you to remove any color cast in your foreground image that is a result of background color “spilling” over into the foreground. For example, if there is a green color cast in your foreground image when using a green screen background.

14. Adjust the Spill Suppress parameters as follows:

- **Clip** — Use the **Hue** knob to adjust spill suppress clipping.
  - Increasing the clip value removes higher-saturated colors from spill suppress correction.
  - Decreasing the clip value includes higher-saturated colors in spill suppress correction. If your foreground image contains bright-colored areas that are suffering from background spill, decrease the clip value to have it corrected.

- **Hue** — Use the **SAT** knob to select the central, or base, color for spill suppress correction. If the color spill does not appear to be the same color as the background, use this control to adjust which hue is considered to be “spilled” into the foreground.
  - Increasing the hue value moves counter-clockwise around the color wheel while selecting a base color.
  - Decreasing the hue value moves clockwise around the color wheel while selecting a base color.

**Operating Tip**

Adjust the **Hue** and **Reject** values first and then, if you cannot remove enough Background Spill from the Foreground of your image, reduce the **Clip** value.
• **Reject** — Use the LUM knob to include or reject adjacent hues to the base.
  ~ Increasing the reject value decreases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in spill correction.
  ~ Decreasing the reject value increases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in spill correction.

15. Press **7. Softness and Luma** to display the **Softness and Luma Menu**.

16. Adjust the Edge Softness and Luminance values as follows:

  • **Edge Softness** — Use the Hue knob to add edge softening to the Foreground image and alpha channel. This may help blend the Foreground image with the underlying background video.
    ~ Increasing the softness value increases the amount of softness applied to the Foreground edges and alpha channel.
    ~ Decreasing the softness value decreases the amount of softness applied to the Foreground image and alpha channel. A value of 0.0% turns off edge softening.

  • **Reflections** — Use the SAT knob to change the brightness of semi-transparent reflections, such as the reflections in eye-glass lenses.
    ~ Increasing the reflections value increases the brightness of semi-transparent reflections.
    ~ Decreasing the reflections value decreases the brightness of semi-transparent reflections.

  • **Bkgd Luma** — Use the LUM knob to change the overall brightness of shadow, translucent, and transition areas. Use this to match shadow, translucent and transition brightness with foreground brightness.
    ~ Increasing the **Bkgd Luma** value increases the brightness of background, translucent, and transition areas.
    ~ Decreasing the **Bkgd Luma** value decreases the brightness of background, translucent, and transition areas.

17. Select any additional Key modifiers you want to use. You can select between the following:

  • **MATTE FILL** — Select this button to fill the hole cut by the Chroma Key with a matte color.
  • **KEY INVERT** — Select this button to invert the polarity of the Chroma Key.
• **MASK** — Select this button to activate the mask feature and mask out a rectangular part of the Chroma Key.
• **FLY KEY** — Select this option to activate the Squeeze & Tease MD option.

18. Perform a CUT, AUTO TRANS, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your UltraChrome Chroma Key on-air.

This completes the procedure for creating an UltraChrome Chroma Key.

**Tips for Chroma Key Fine-Tuning in Advanced Mode**

The procedures in this section do not describe how to adjust a Chroma Key, but does show you the best method for solving common problems with a Chroma Key.

Use the following procedure to fine-tune your UltraChrome Chroma Key:

1. Select your **Primary Color**. This is the color you want to remove.
2. **Initialize** the Key.
3. Toggle the **Color Map** to **On** so that you can view the different elements of the Chroma Key.
4. Do **Shadows** exist on the Background?
   - **No** — Proceed to the next step.
   - **Yes** — Adjust the **Shadow Range** to **0.0%** so that the **Shadow Range** will be the same as the **Translucent Range**. The Red background will change to Green.
5. Are portions of the **Foreground** (Black) being Keyed out (Red or Green)? Red or Green spots will appear on the Black foreground.
   - **No** — Proceed to the next step.
   - **Yes** — Adjust the **Saturation Range** of the **Background** so that the Green and Red elements on the **Foreground** become Gray. You can further decrease the **Background** elements on the **Foreground** by adjusting the **Positive Hue** and **Negative Hue** of the **Background**.
6. Are portions of the **Transition Range** (Gray) appearing on the **Foreground** (Black)? Gray spots will appear on the Black foreground.
   - **No** — Proceed to the next step.
   - **Yes** — Adjust the **Clip** range of the **Foreground** so that the Gray elements on the **Foreground** become Black or Blue. You can further decrease the **Transition** elements on the **Foreground** by adjusting the **Hue** and **Reject** ranges.
7. Are portions of the **Background** (Red) being pushed to the **Foreground** (Black)? Black spots will appear on the Red background.
   - **No** — Proceed to the next step.
   - **Yes** — Adjust the **Clip** range of the **Foreground** so that the **Black** elements on the **Background** become Gray. You can further decrease the **Foreground** elements on the **Background** by adjusting the **Hue** and **Reject** ranges.
8. Are portions of the **Transition Range** (Gray) appearing on the **Background** (Red)? Gray spots will appear on the Red background.
   - **No** — Proceed to the next step.
   - **Yes** — Adjust the **Saturation Range** of the **Background** so that the Gray elements on the **Background** become Red or Green. You can further decrease the **Transition**
elements on the **Background** by adjusting the **Positive Hue** and **Negative Hue** of the **Background**.

9. Are there **Shadows** in the Chroma Key?
   - **No** — Increase the **Translucency Gain** to increase the amount of detail, or decrease the **Translucency Gain** to have a cleaner **Background**.
   - **Yes** — Increase the **Shadow Gain** to increase the amount of detail, or decrease the **Shadow Gain** to have a cleaner **Background**.

This completes the procedure for fine-tuning an UltraChrome Chroma Key.

**Chroma Key Memory**

UnlikeSelf Keys, Chroma Keys do not retain the clip and gain values with each crosspoint. Instead, there is only one set of values associated with the entire switcher at a given time. Therefore, each time you change the source of the Chroma Key, you will have to re-clip the Key as outlined above.

**Chroma Key Lighting Tips**

Achieving a good, clean Chroma Key is often considered one of the most challenging exercises in a studio. There are several elements that contribute to an effective Chroma Key including, lighting, distance of the talent from the background, type of background used, and the type of camera used. However, lighting is often considered the most important. Here are a few lighting hints which you may find helpful when setting up your Chroma Key.

**Lighting the Background**

- There are several different kinds of lights typically used to light Chroma Key backgrounds. The most common are, cyclorama lights, soft lights, scoops, florescent lights, HMIs, and umbrella lights.

  For the most part, the one thing that they all have in common is the fact that they are “fill” type lights, as opposed to “Key” lights. These lights provide an even, diffused, flat light, which is critical in lighting Chroma Key backgrounds.

- For best results, lights are usually hung in an even pattern from a grid above the background but space requirements may dictate the lights be positioned on stands beside the background. If side lighting is used, ensure the lights are positioned at equal distances from the background being lit, in order to achieve balance.

- The number of lights used to light a background is directly related to the size of the background surface. Therefore, a larger, longer surface requires more lights than a smaller one. But whatever size of surface you are lighting, the most important point to remember is the background should be lit as evenly as possible to avoid “hot spots” in the Chroma Key.

- When lighting the background, experienced lighting directors will check the background for hot spots, adjusting and readjusting the lights, using either a waveform monitor or a photographer’s light meter. Waveform monitors are most useful since they display a graphical representation of the video level and any small variation in light level is immediately apparent. On the other hand, a light meter in the hands of an experienced professional can achieve the same results.

- Generally speaking, best Chroma Key results are achieved with an even level of light on the background in the area of 60 – 75 IRE on a waveform monitor. However, conditions specific to your application may dictate a value outside of that range.
• If you only have access to Key type lights, you can simulate the effect of fill lights by bouncing a Key light off of a reflector and then on to the Chroma Key background. Also, you can use diffused glass, gels, or scrims to soften the light from a Key light. If you use any of these methods it’s important to note that you will lose a significant amount of the original light intensity. Therefore, it takes more lights to reach the optimum IRE level required for a good Chroma Key.

**Lighting the Foreground (Talent)**

• You can maximize the quality of your Chroma Key if you separate the foreground (talent) from the background by 6 – 8 feet. This enables you to light the foreground and the background separately, thus reducing or avoiding “spill” and/or shadows.

Separation also allows you more flexibility in how you light your talent. You may still choose to use a flat lighting technique, but with separation, the option exists to light your talent using a more dramatic 3-light, “Rembrandt style of lighting”, typically used in other lighting applications. This style is characterized by three lights – a Key, a fill, and a back light.

• If spill does occur between the background and the foreground, a blue “halo” or “matte line” appears around the talent’s shoulders and hair. This can be reduced or eliminated by using a yellow, straw, or amber colored light for the talent’s back light. It will wash out or neutralize the blue reflection from the background on the back of the talent.

• As a general rule, it is good practice to light the foreground and the background to approximately the same IRE levels but this is often varied when dramatic lighting effects are required for the talent.

• And finally, be careful not to mix lights with different color temperatures on the same set (either foreground or background). The human eye and brain are able to deal with the subtle differences in color temperatures but cameras are not nearly that smart. If you must use lights with different color temperatures, make sure you use colored gels to compensate for the differences. Otherwise, you may experience holes in your Chroma Key that will be very difficult to remove.

**Additional Chroma Key Tips and Considerations**

Along with lighting, there are a number of other studio elements that should be taken into account when setting up your Chroma Keys. They include, the background material itself, the camera and its setup, Keying from a prerecorded signal on VTR, and using compressed video sources.

• Green and blue are the two most common colors used for chroma Keying backgrounds and are equally effective. Blue was initially chosen because it is the complimentary color to flesh tone and, therefore, the easiest to Key out (we don’t want to Key out the faces, do we …). Given today’s technology, almost any color can be used but blue and green are still the most widely used.

• There are a number of different materials commonly used as Chroma Key backgrounds and each has its benefits. The most common are paper, fabric, and paint. Paper is not as durable but can be more cost effective and more easily set up than the other two. Paint takes time and must be applied in several coats to ensure a deep, complete covering, while fabric also takes time and must be mounted and hung properly. Contact your television set and lighting distributor for details on the material that best meets your budget and application.

• If you are creating your Chroma Key on a studio set, it is generally accepted that the quality of your Chroma Key is directly related to the quality of the camera shooting the scene. The background video can come from any number of sources and may be quite
acceptable but the foreground video is what is being Keyed and where your attention is most focused. Therefore, the camera must be as high a resolution and low in noise as your budget will allow. In the end, low cost cameras may never produce “acceptable” Chroma Key results no matter how well the lighting has been configured.

• As well, never shoot a Chroma Key with the detail turned on in your camera. Detail adds noise to the video signal and makes it much more difficult for the Chroma Key circuits to process the video. Turning on the camera detail is not the solution to a low light level – more lights are!

• And finally, a few other points for your consideration. Avoid using foreground Chroma Key sources from 4:1:1 formats, highly compressed material (more than 4 to 1), or composite analog recordings. The technical nature of their formats and storage algorithms defeat the Chroma Key circuits and will seldom deliver acceptable results.
Split Keys

A **Split Key** is one in which you assign a different *fill source* for a Key. This is a Key source that is different than the *default* Key/fill associations that are set up during installation and different from those that are set up **automatically** for the various Key types. Split Keys are typically used for creative montages and for Keying moving video *inside* Key shapes.

There are two different split Key functions:

- **Split Key** — A split Key allows you to hold (retain) the alpha signal of the Key and assign a new video source to fill the hole. A typical application is when you fill your character generator alpha signal with the live output from a VTR or camera.

- **Split Video** — A split video allows you to hold a (non-alpha) Key cutter and select a new video source to fill the hole. A typical application is when you fill your title camera’s luminance Key signal with the live output from a VTR.

In both cases, a new *fill source* is assigned while the hole cutter is *held*. The following methods allow you to perform split Keys — without having to return to the **Inputs Menu** and change your Key/fill associations.

**Performing a Split Key**

The **Split Key** function allows you to hold the alpha signal of a Key and assign a new video source to fill the hole. A split Key can be formed in both of the Effects Keyers, and the DSK.

Use the following procedure to perform a split Key in Key 1:

1. Select a background source on the **PGM** bus. This provides the background over which the Key will appear.
2. Press **KEY1** in the **Transition Control Group** to preview the Key. This step will also serve to assign the **Key bus** and **Effects Keyers Group** to **Key 1**.
3. Select a Key source on the **Key 1** bus.
4. Press **AUTO SELECT** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
5. Press and *hold* **AUTO SELECT**.
6. Select the new fill source on the **Key 1** bus.
7. Release both buttons.

**Operating Tip**

Both buttons will now be lit on the **Key 1** bus. The selected Key alpha video source will still be lit, and the new split fill video source will be flashing.

8. Adjust the Clip and Gain of the Key as needed. Refer to the section “**Performing an Auto Select Key**” on page 7-10 for more information.

**Note**

The **Split Key** function is a *temporary* assignment. If, after setting up the split Key, you press *any button* on the **Key Bus** or select another Key type, the split is removed and you must set up the split Key again. Pressing **AUTO SELECT** again *does not re-establish* the split Key.

This completes the procedure for performing a split Key in Key 1.
Performing a Split Video

The Split Video function allows you to hold a luminance Key cutter and assign a new video source to fill the hole.

Use the following procedure to perform a split video in Key 1:

1. Select a background source on the PGM bus. This provides the background over which the Key will appear.
2. Press KEY1 in the Transition Control Group to preview the Key. This step will also serve to assign the Key bus and Effects Keyers Group to Key 1.
3. Select a Key source on the Key 1 bus.
5. Press and hold SELF KEY.
6. Select the new fill source on the Key 1 bus.
7. Release both buttons.

Both buttons will now be lit on the Key 1 bus. The selected Key alpha video source will still be lit, and the new split fill video source will be flashing.

8. The Key bus will now have two buttons lit:
9. Adjust the Clip and Gain of the Key as needed. Refer to the section “Performing a Self Key” on page 7-9 for more information.

The Split Key function is a temporary assignment. If, after setting up the split Key, you press any button on the Key Bus or select another Key type, the split is removed and you must set up the split Key again. Pressing SELF KEY again does not re-establish the split Key.

This completes the procedure for performing a split video in Key 1.
MultiDSK Option

The MultiDSK™ option adds two Downstream Keyers to the Synergy 100 MD Switcher. These two DSKs are named DSK4 and DSK5. MultiDSK is currently only available for Auto-Select Keys. When MultiDSK is enabled, BNCs B01 to B06 are locked, and Preview with Overlay is defaulted to BNC B07. Refer to the section “MultiDSK Setup” of your Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for information on output configurations for MultiDSK.

When your external Downstream Keyers option is configured, the TRANS LIMIT and PST BLACK buttons will become DSK4 DISS, and DSK5 DISS, respectively. To accommodate this, a Key Caps Kit is included with your option package. For new customers who purchase a new Synergy 100 MD Switcher with a downstream Keyer options package, the appropriate Key caps are installed in the panel before shipping.

The following topics are discussed in this section:

- MultiDSK Operation
- Setting MultiDSK Sources and Transition Rates
- DSK Drop
- Isolate MultiDSK
- MultiDSK Control Using a GPI

Refer to the section “Downstream Keyer Group” on page 7-5 for more information on performing a Downstream Key.

MultiDSK Operation

The addition of the MultiDSK option alters the functionality and appearance of some of the buttons on the control panel. The TRANS LIMIT and PST BLACK buttons become DSK4 DISS and DSK5 DISS, respectively.

When the MultiDSK™ option is enabled, the DSK4 DISS and DSK5 DISS buttons allow you to dissolve the Keys on and off-air.

The new buttons for the MultiDSK option operate as follows:

- The DSK4 DISS button allows you to transition Downstream Keyer 4 on and off-air. When the Key is on-air, the ON AIR indicator below the DSK4 button in the Transition Group will be lit.
- The DSK5 DISS button allows you to transition Downstream Keyer 5 on and off-air. When the Key is on-air, the ON AIR indicator below the DSK5 button in the Transition Group will be lit.

Setting MultiDSK Sources and Transition Rates

The video source and transition rate for your MultiDSK option can be configured via the MultiDSK Menu.

The transition rate can be set between 0 and 999 frames. The default value is dependant on the video frame rate configured on your switcher. A rate of 0 indicates a cut transition is performed, instead of a dissolve transition.
Use the following procedure to set MultiDSK sources and transition rates:

1. Navigate to the **MultiDSK Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.

   ![Effects Menu]

2. Press **7. MultiDSK** to display the **MultiDSK Menu**.

   ![MultiDSK Menu]

3. Set the source for **DSK4** as follows:
   - Press **0. DSK4 Source** to activate this menu item.
   - Use the ↑ and ↓ buttons or the **Aspect** knob to select a source.
   - Press **SEL** to save the setting.

4. Set the transition rate for **DSK4** as follows:
   - Press **1. DSK4 Rate** to activate this menu item.
   - Use the ↑ and ↓ buttons or the **Aspect** knob to select a rate between 0 - 999 frames.
   - Press **SEL** to save the setting.

5. Set the source for **DSK5** as follows:
   - Press **2. DSK5 Source** to activate this menu item.
   - Use the ↑ and ↓ buttons or the **Aspect** knob to select a source.
   - Press **SEL** to save the setting.

6. Set the transition rate for **DSK5** as follows:
   - Press **3. DSK5 Rate** to activate this menu item.
• Use the ▲ and ▼ buttons or the Aspect knob to select a rate between 0 - 999 frames.

• Press SEL to save the setting.

**Operating Tip**
Pressing BACK or MENU while changing a setting will abandon those changes in the MultiDSK Menu.

This completes the procedure to set MultiDSK sources and transition rates.

**DSK Drop**

The Downstream Keyer Drop (DSK Drop) feature allows you to have the DSK cut off-air whenever a new source is selected directly on the Program Bus. This means that if the DSK is on-air and you select any crosspoint on the Program Bus, the DSK will be cut off-air and the new source on the Program Bus will be cut on-air.

**Note**
The DSK Drop feature will not affect the DSK if a transition is performed on the Program Bus, or if the same crosspoint button on the Program Bus is pressed.

Use the following procedure to configure the **DSK Drop** mode:

1. Navigate to the Personality Menu as follows:
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 6. Personality to display the Personality Menu.

   ```
   Personality - Synergy 100
   0. Trans PV  On  5. GstoreMem  On
   1. DSK Drop  Manual  6. Isolate DSK  Off
   2. Sleep Time  10 min
   3. Menu Bttn  Menu Only
   4. AutoRcall  On
   
   MENU  100  10  1  SEL
   Exit  Previous  Down  Up  Accept
   
   Personality Menu
   ```

2. Press 1. DSK Drop to display the DSK Drop Menu.

   ```
   DSK Drop
   0. DSK3 Drop  Manual
   1. DSK4 Drop  Manual
   2. DSK5 Drop  Manual
   
   MENU  100  10  1  SEL
   Exit  Previous  Down  Up  Accept
   
   DSK Drop Menu
   ```
3. Press the corresponding number beside the DSK you wish to toggle between Auto and Manual.

This completes the procedure to configure the DSK Drop mode.

**Isolate MultiDSK**

You can isolate the two MultiDSKs to prevent them from being affected by memory recalls and switcher soft-resets. Isolated MultiDSKs also can not be included in Program/Preset-MLE transitions (you can still transition them using the keys in the **Downstream Keyer Group**). Isolated MultiDSKs are not affected by certain actions that you perform on the switcher as follows:

- **Memory Recalls** — Memory registers that were saved with MultiDSK sources and configurations will not overwrite the current MultiDSK settings when recalled. The non-MultiDSK settings in the memory registered will be recalled.

- **Switcher Soft-Reset** — Performing a switcher soft-reset will not return the MultiDSKs to a default state. All MultiDSK settings including the selected source, key type, and on-air status will be preserved.

- **Program/Preset MLE Transitions** — You can not include MultiDSKs in Program/Preset MLE transitions. You must transition the MultiDSKs on and off-air using only the buttons in the **Downstream Keyer Group**.

Use the following procedure to isolate your MultiDSKs:

1. Navigate to the Personality Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 6. Personality to display the Personality Menu.

2. Press 6. Isolate DSK to toggle this option on or off.

This completes the procedure to isolate your MultiDSKs.

**MultiDSK Control Using a GPI**

MultiDSK transitions on the Synergy 100 MD switcher can be performed via a GPI. This feature is configured via the **Frame GPIs Menu**.

Use the following procedure to configure GPI control of the MultiDSK option:

1. Navigate to the Personality Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 3. GPIs to display the GPIs Menu.
2. Press **0. Frame GPIs** to display the **Frame GPIs Menu**.

3. Set the **Area** value as follows:
   - Press **2. Area** to active this menu item.
   - Use the ↑ and ↓ buttons or the **Aspect** knob to select **DSK4** or **DSK5**.
   - Press **SEL** to save the setting.

4. Set the **Function** value as follows:
   - Press **1. Function** to active this menu item.
   - Use the ↑ and ↓ buttons or the **Aspect** knob to select **Cut** or **Auto Trans**.
   - Press **SEL** to save the setting.

**Operating Tip**

Pressing the **BACK** or **MENU** while changing a setting will abandon those changes in the **Frame GPIs Menu**.

This completes the procedure to configure GPI control of the MultiDSK option.
Programming a Favorite CG

This procedure allows you to select a “favorite” CG that you can place on the CHAR GEN1 or CHAR GEN2 buttons in the Downstream Keyer Group. The feature is designed so that you can select a “clean” CG in the AUTO SELECT mode, with no Key modifiers enabled.

Use the following procedure to program the CHAR GEN1 button:

1. Press and hold CHAR GEN1 in the Downstream Keyer Group.
2. Select the favorite CG source on the Key Bus.
3. Release both buttons.

This completes the procedure for assigning a source to CHAR GEN1 button. The same procedure is applied to assigning a video source to the CHAR GEN2 button. The selected CG source will be stored in memory and will be recalled each time CHAR GEN1 is pressed.

**Note**

If you have a simple or complex Key type already set up, when you press CHAR GEN1 or CHAR GEN2, the entire Keyer is cleared. In addition to the favorite CG, the system will automatically select AUTO SELECT and KEY MEM (provided the Auto Select Key with the appropriate Key Memory values has been set up in the installation).
Using Auto Transitions With Keys

The **AUTO TRANS** button in the **Transition Control Group** is used to start an automatic (smooth) transition that takes the selected Key on or off-air. Refer to the section “Performing Auto Transitions” on page 5-8 for more information on performing an Auto Transition.

- **Two different** auto-transition rates can be used to dissolve or wipe a Key:
  - **Auto Rate** — If the **AUTO TRANS** button in the **Transition Control Group** is used in conjunction with the “next transition” buttons, the rate is controlled by the **AUTO** rate in the **System Control Group**.
  - **DSK Rate** — If the **DSK DISS** button in the **Transition Control Group** is used, the rate is controlled by the **DSK** rate in the **System Control Group**.

Each auto transition button has its own unique rate. This allows you to perform Key transitions and downstream Key transitions at different rates.

**Note**
The time duration of a frame rate will vary, depending on the type of video format the switcher is running in. Refer to Chapter 2, “System Architecture”, in the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* for more information.

For example, with an **AUTO** rate of 20 frames and a **DSK** rate of 15 frames, you could fade in a Key at 20 frames (using the **AUTO TRANS** button in the **Transition Control Group**) and fade out the downstream Key at 15 frames using the **DSK DISS** button in the **Transition Control Group**.

Refer to the section “Changing Auto Transition Rates” on page 5-9 for more information on changing the auto transition rates.

**Key Auto Transition Notes**

Please note the following important points regarding Key auto transitions:

- **There are two ways to finish an Auto Transition that is already in progress:**
  - Press **CUT** during the transition to finish the transition immediately.
  - Move the **Fader** from one limit to the other.

**Important**
Once you move the **Fader** off-limit the transition will stop. If you continue to move the fader until the **AUTO TRANS** button goes out the transition control has been passed to the Fader. If you move the fader back to the original limit you can continue the transition by pressing the **AUTO TRANS** button again or by pressing the **CUT** button.

- **You cannot** perform an Auto Transition if the **Fader** is off its upper or lower limit.
- The **DSK** can only be transitioned using the **DSK DISS** or **DSK CUT** buttons. The position of the Fader or the next transition selections does not affect a Downstream Keyer transition.
- Wipes can only be performed on the **Effects Keyer** transition or **Background** transitions.
Key Modifiers

In This Chapter

This chapter provides instructions for using the keys of your Synergy 100 MD Switcher. The following topics are discussed:

- Filling a Key with Matte
- Masking Keys
- Inverting Keys
- Flying Keys
- Positioner
Filling a Key with Matte

Use the following procedure to fill a key with matte color in Key 1:

1. Select a background source on the PGM bus. This provides the background over which the key will appear.

2. Press KEY1 in the Transition Control Group to preview the key. This step will also serve to assign the Key bus and Effects Keyers Group to Key 1.

3. Select a key source on the Key 1 bus.

4. Select either SELF KEY, AUTO SELECT, or CHROMA KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.

5. Press MATTE FILL in the Effects Keyers Group. The key fill will now be replaced with the current color from the matte generator.

6. Adjust the color of the matte as follows:
   - **HUE** — Use the HUE knob in the Mattes Group to adjust the color of the matte generator.
   - **SAT** — Use the SAT knob in the Mattes Group to adjust the color saturation. The saturation can be adjusted from monochrome, or no saturation, to full color saturation.
   - **LUM** — Use the LUM knob in the Mattes Group to adjust the luminance of the color. The luminance can be adjusted from minimum brightness to maximum brightness.

7. Add additional key modifiers as required.

8. Perform a CUT, AUTO TRANS, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your key on-air.

This completes the procedure for filling a key with matte color in Key 1. Refer to the section “Mattes Group” on page 6–10 for more detailed color instructions.

Note

You cannot apply MATTE FILL to a PST PATT key. Matte Fill can be applied to all other key types.
Masking Keys

Use the following procedure to mask a Key in Key 1:

1. Select a background source on the PGM bus. This provides the background over which the key will appear.

2. Press KEY1 in the Transition Control Group to preview the key. This step will also serve to assign the Key bus and Effects Keyers Group to Key 1.

3. Select a key source on the Key 1 bus.

4. Select either SELF KEY, AUTO SELECT, CHROMA KEY, or PST PATT in the Effects Keyers Group.

5. Press MASK in the Effects Keyers Group. The current settings of the mask generator will be applied to the key.

6. Adjust the size, position, and aspect of the mask as follows:

   • **Size** — Twist the positioner to increase or decrease the size of the mask.
   • **Position** — Move the positioner **Up/Down** or **Left/Right** to place the mask where you want it.
   • **Aspect** — Use the ASPECT knob in the Effects Control Group to adjust the aspect of the mask.

7. Invert the mask as follows:

   • Press the REV button in the Effects Control Menu Group to invert the mask.

8. Add additional key modifiers as required.

9. Perform a CUT, AUTO TRANS, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your key on-air.

This completes the procedure for masking a Key in Key 1.

**Note**

You can return the mask to the default size, position, and aspect by pressing the CNTR button in the Effects Control Menu Group.
Inverting Keys

Use the following procedure to invert a key in Key 1:

1. Select a background source on the PGM bus. This provides the background over which the key will appear.

2. Press KEY1 in the Transition Control Group to preview the key. This step will also serve to assign the Key bus and Effects Keyers Group to Key 1.

3. Select a key source on the Key 1 bus.

4. Select either SELF KEY, AUTO SELECT, CHROMA KEY, or PST PATT in the Effects Keyers Group.

5. Press KEY INVERT in the Effects Keyers Group. The polarity of the current key cut by the clip and gain values will be inverted.

6. Adjust the Clip and Gain of the key as follows:
   • Use the CLIP knob in the Effects Keyers Group to adjust the luminance of the key. The lower the threshold setting, the more the key is visible.
   • Use the GAIN knob in the Effects Keyers Group to adjust the softness of the edges of the key.

7. Add additional key modifiers as required.

8. Perform a CUT, AUTO TRANS, or move the fader from one limit to the other to take your key on-air.

This completes the procedure for inverting a key in Key 1.
Flying Keys

Note

The Squeeze & Tease MD option must be installed in order to Fly a Key.

The Fly Key allows you to apply DVE effects to any of the four Key Types, with the ability to control the size, horizontal position, and vertical position. Refer to the section “3D Guidelines” on page 12–16 for more information on flying keys in Squeeze & Tease MD.
The **Positioner** is an *assignable* module that allows you to manipulate the size and position of wipe patterns, Flying Keys, masks, crop edges, and adjust PST PATT keys, and adjust Squeeze & Tease Keys, depending upon the selected mode.

The control of the 3-axis **Positioner** (also known as a *joystick*) is illustrated below:

- Moving the **Positioner left** or **right** controls the horizontal position of the key or mask. It also controls the left and right edges of the Flying Key in cropping mode and the horizontal rotation of a flown key when the **Squeeze & Tease MD** option is installed.
- Moving the **Positioner up** or **down** controls the vertical position of the key or mask. It also controls the upper and lower edges of the Flying Key in cropping mode and the vertical rotation of a flown key when the **Squeeze & Tease MD** option is installed.
- Twisting the **Positioner** clockwise or counter-clockwise controls the size of the key or mask. It also provides a means of rotating the vertical and horizontal wipes when the **ROTATE** button is active and the planar (or Z-axis) rotation of a flown key when the **Squeeze & Tease MD** option is installed.
Memory and Disk Functions

In This Chapter

This chapter provides instructions for using your Memory and Disk functions. The following topics are discussed:

• Memory Functions
• Storing Memory Registers
• Recalling Memory Registers
• Effects Dissolve
• Using Storage Devices
• Disk Menu Tree
• Saving Registers
• Recalling Registers
Memory Functions

The memory system stores and recalls complete switcher set-ups including key source and fill information, wipe pattern selection, masking, transition rates, borders, key attributes, and color matte levels — all the control panel settings that comprise a typical built-up scene.

The memory controls consist of the MEM button, the CNTR/EFF D button, and the REV/LEARN button located in the Effects Control Groups. These buttons are used in conjunction with the System Control Group and the Effects Control pattern buttons.

A memory register is a “snapshot” of the current state of the switcher. You can store up to 100 registers, numbered 00 to 99. Memory registers are organized into 10 Banks, each containing 10 memory registers. The Bank is represented by the number in the tens position, and the memory register by the number in the ones position on the display in the System Control Group. The example above shows memory 25, this is Bank 2, Memory register 5.
Banks are numbered from 0 through 9, and the registers within each bank are also numbered 0 through 9.

- Bank 0 (registers 00 to 09)
- Bank 1 (registers 10 to 19)
- Bank 2 (registers 20 to 29) etc.

When the MEM button in the Effects Control Group is pressed, the pattern buttons in the Effects Control Group allow you to store or recall the 10 memory registers in a selected Bank. To access different memory banks, use the 10 button in the System Control Group. One bank is active at any given time.

Storing Memory Registers

Memories can be stored using either the Quick Store, or the Advanced Store method. The Quick Store method allows you to store memories to different registers in the same bank using just the Pattern Buttons. If you want to store memories to different banks, you should use the Advanced Store method. The Advanced Store method allows you to store memories to different registers in different banks using the 10 and 1 buttons in the System Control Group.

Note

Remember that when you store a panel setup, you store everything, including all underlying data. For example, if you store a register that includes one or more keys, not only is the key data stored for the current on air keys, but data (e.g., clip and gain) is also stored for keys that are not currently on air.

Quick Store

Use the following procedure to save a memory using the quick store method:

1. Set up the switcher to the configuration you want to store.
2. Press the MEM button in the Effects Control Group. The button will illuminate green.

Note

If you want to use an Effects Dissolve to recall this memory, you must toggle the CNTR (EFF D) button On before storing the memory. The Auto Recall feature must be on in order to store the Effects Dissolve with the memory. Refer to the Chapter “Completing Setup”, in the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for more information.
3. Use the 10 (¶) button to select the Bank that you want to store the memory to. If the bank is already selected you do not have to change it.

**Operating Tip**

The memory bank is also displayed following the MEM on the display in the Effects Control Group.

![Menu Control Group — Memory Bank Selection](image)

4. Press the REV (LEARN) button to enter memory store mode.

**Operating Tip**

A store operation can be canceled only if a memory location has not already been selected. Press REV/LEARN or MEM to abort the store operation.

5. Press the pattern button corresponding to the Memory Register you want to store the switcher setup to. The switcher setup is stored and the LED on the REV/LEARN button turns off.

This completes the procedure for storing a memory using the Quick Store method.

**Advanced Store**

Use the following procedure to save a memory using the advanced store method:

1. Set up the switcher to the configuration you want to store.
2. Press the MEM button in the Effects Control Group. The button will illuminate green.

**Note**

If you want to use an Effects Dissolve to recall this memory, you must toggle the CNTR (EFF D) button On before storing the memory. The Auto Recall feature must be on in order to store the Effects Dissolve with the memory. Refer to Chapter 10, “Completing Setup”, in the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for more information.

3. Press the REV (LEARN) button to enter memory store mode.

4. Use the 10 (¶) button to select the Bank that you want to store the memory to. If the bank is already selected you do not have to change it.

**Operating Tip**

The memory bank is also displayed following the MEM on the display in the Effects Control Group.
Menu Control Group — Memory Bank Selection

5. Use the 1 button to select the Memory Register that you want to store the memory to.

Important Storing a setup in a specific register overwrites any previous information that may have been contained in that register.
A store operation cannot be undone.

6. Press the right SEL button, in the System Control Group, to store the memory. The switcher setup is stored and the LED on the REV (LEARN) button turns off.

Operating Tip If you want to store more memories in the same bank you can use the Quick Store method.

This completes the procedure for storing a memory using the Advanced Store method.

Recalling Memory Registers

Memories can be recalled using either the Quick Recall, or the Advanced Recall method. The Quick Recall method allows you to recall memories from different registers in the same bank using just the Pattern Buttons. If you want to recall memories from different banks, you should use the Advanced Recall method. The Advanced Recall method allows you to recall memories from different registers in different banks using the 10 and 1 buttons in the System Control Group.

Quick Recall

Use the following procedure to recall a memory using the Quick Recall method:

1. Press the MEM button in the Effects Control Group. The button will illuminate green.

2. Use the 10 button to select the Bank that you want to recall the memory from. If the bank is already selected you do not have to change it.

Operating Tip The memory bank is also displayed following the MEM on the display in the Effects Control Group.
Menu Control Group — Memory Bank Selection

3. Press the pattern button corresponding to the Memory Register you want to recall the switcher setup from. The switcher setup is recalled.

**Note**

If this memory was stored with the **Effects Dissolve** feature activated, and the **AutoRecall** option is set to **On**, the **CNTR (EFF D)** button will be lit, and the current switcher setting will “slew” to the new recalled setting.

This completes the procedure for recalling a memory using the Quick Recall method.

**Advanced Recall**

Use the following procedure to perform an **advanced** recall:

1. Press the **MEM** button in the **Effects Control Group**. The button will illuminate green.

2. Press the **10 (¶)** button in the **System Control Group** to select the Bank that contains the memory register you want to recall.

3. Press the **1 (©)** button in the **System Control Group** to select the Memory Register that you want to recall.

4. Press the right **SEL** button to recall the memory.

**Note**

If this memory was stored with the **Effects Dissolve** feature activated, and the **AutoRecall** option is set to **On**, the **CNTR (EFF D)** button will be lit, and the current switcher setting will “slew” to the new recalled setting.

**Operating Tip**

If you want to recall more memories from the same bank you can use the Quick Recall method.

This completes the procedure for recalling a memory using the Advanced Recall method.

**Recall Register Notes**

Please note the following important points regarding memory register recalls:

- After a recall, the panel responds to the recalled values and not to the current position of the knobs. This may result in the control knob reaching its mechanical stop before the full value is reached. If this happens, it will be necessary to rotate the knob away from the mechanical stop to a point where some change is again observed. At this point, the knob is will returned to normal operation. This makes it possible to make adjustments on the program output without observing any jump as the control knob is re-synchronized.

- When a register is recalled that includes an off-limit **Fader**, the system brings the effect back as a **temporary “wipe limit.”** You can use the **AUTO TRANS** button to complete the transition.
• It is possible to recall a memory while retaining a current video crosspoint. This is accomplished by holding down the crosspoint of the video that you want to keep, and then recalling the desired memory. This feature applies to both Key buses and DSK bus, as well as the Background and Preset buses.

• It is possible to trigger a memory recall using a frame GPI input.
## Effects Dissolve

The CNTR (EFF D) button in the Effects Control Group enables you to “slew” a switcher setup from its current setting to a new recalled setting. In DVE terms, an Effects Dissolve is a two-Keyframe effect in which the switcher interpolates between two different images (a source effect image and a destination effect image) at a given rate.

### Operating Tip

The Effects Dissolve feature can be stored and automatically recalled with the memory. Refer to Chapter 10, “Completing Setup” in the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for more information on setting up the Auto Recall feature.

### Notes on Using Effects Dissolve

There are a number of points that must be considered when working with Effects Dissolves as follows:

- Only analog functions, such as border color, clip levels and pattern positions, slew between a current setting and a new recalled setting. When the CNTR (EFF D) button is armed, and the recall function is performed, the Synergy 100 MD first recalls all non-dissolving values prior to beginning the effects dissolve itself. This means that everything that is not an analog value, such as key priorities, crosspoints, patterns, next transition data, is recalled in the first frame of the effects dissolve, followed by all analog values in the second frame. Presetting the switcher with the correct backgrounds and priorities, immediately prior to performing the effects dissolve, guarantees the correct ending position for your effects.

- If the CNTR (EFF D) button is off, recalled effects cut between memories.

- The Effects Dissolve function is valid for recall operations only. Storage operations are not affected.

- The duration of the Effects Dissolve is governed by the transition rate that is programmed into the destination register. For example:
  - Effect #1 is a box Preset Pattern that is positioned in the upper left corner of the screen. It is stored in memory register 1 with a transition rate of 10 frames.
  - Effect #2 is a box Preset Pattern that is positioned in the upper right corner of the screen. It is stored in memory register 2 with a transition rate of 45 frames.

  If you cut to register 1 and then recall register 2 with an Effects Dissolve, the box wipe moves from the upper left corner to the upper right corner at a 45 frame duration.

  - The Effects Dissolve function will not transform a circle wipe into a box wipe. For example:
    - Effect #3 is a circle Preset Pattern that is positioned in the center of the screen. It is stored in register 3 with a transition rate of 30 frames.

    - If you cut to register 1 and then recall register 3, with an Effects Dissolve, the system cuts to the circle wipe and then moves it from the upper left to the center at a 30 frame duration.

- You can slew as many functions within the MLE as desired.
Creating a Basic Effects Dissolve

In the example shown, both the source and destination effects are saved. It is not always necessary to save both the source and destination effect. You can slew from a current setting to a recalled setting that has been previously programmed.

Use the following procedure to perform a basic effects dissolve:

1. Program an effect with the intention of performing an Effects Dissolve — that is, a change between two different analog settings (e.g., a wipe in two positions, a border with two unique colors, two different “Fly Key” positions).

The following illustration displays a two-channel object as the first Keyframe in the effect.

![Source Effect — First Keyframe](image)

2. Enter the desired transition rate. Refer to the section “Changing Auto Transition Rates” on page 5–9 for more information.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the second effect (remember that two setups are required to perform an effects dissolve — essentially, a source effect and a destination effect).

The following illustration displays the object that has been moved and rotated in 3D space.

![Destination Effect — Second Keyframe](image)

4. Recall the first setup from memory. Refer to the section “Recalling Memory Registers” on page 9–5 for more information.
5. To perform the Effects Dissolve, press CNTR (EFF D) and recall the second setup from memory. The system first recalls all non-dissolving values (with a cut) and then slews all analog values.

![Diagram showing Location and Rotation Effects Dissolve]

6. Repeat step 6 if you want to slew back to the first setup or to any additional registers that have been properly stored in preparation for the Effects Dissolve function. You can slew or cut between as many setups as desired, simply governed by the CNTR (EFF D) button and the way that the effect was programmed.

**Operating Tip**

Pressing another memory button while an effects dissolve is in progress will cause the dissolve to stop and transition from its current state (midway between the original two memories) to the state of the destination effect.

The menu will not show the image moving or changing while the effects dissolve is in progress. It will be updated with the new values once the dissolve is finished.

This completes the procedure for perform a basic effects dissolve.

**Working with Channels and Objects**

The following table can be used to predict how the Effects Dissolve will behave when working with various combinations of channels and objects.

**Important**

Channels will not interpolate across Keyers. You cannot perform an Effects Dissolve from one Keyer to another.

**Effects Dissolve Behavior Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The source effect has two channels and the destination effect has two channels.</td>
<td>Channel 1 will interpolate to the destination effect for Channel 1. Channel 2 will interpolate to the destination effect for Channel 2. Note: This will occur no matter what video sources are assigned to Channels 1 and 2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The source effect has two channels, and the destination effect has only one channel. The channel that is not contained in the destination effect will be cut off air at the start of the transition and the other channel will interpolate.

The source effect has one channel and the destination effect has two channels. The channel that is not contained in the source effect will cut on (to its final state) at the start of the transition and the other channel will interpolate.

The source effect has only one channel in use, and the destination effect has a different channel in use. The source channel will interpolate to the destination effect of the second channel (remember that both must be in the same Keyer).

The source effect has one channel, and you are recalling a destination effect with a two-channel object. The second channel of the object will cut on (to its final state) at the start of the transition and the first channel will interpolate.

The source effect has two channels and you are recalling a destination effect with a two-channel object. Both channels will transition to the destination effect and be made part of an object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The source effect has two channels, and the destination effect has only one channel.</td>
<td>The channel that is not contained in the destination effect will be cut off air at the start of the transition and the other channel will interpolate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The source effect has one channel and the destination effect has two channels.</td>
<td>The channel that is not contained in the source effect will cut on (to its final state) at the start of the transition and the other channel will interpolate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The source effect has only one channel in use, and the destination effect has a different channel in use.</td>
<td>The source channel will interpolate to the destination effect of the second channel (remember that both must be in the same Keyer).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The source effect has one channel, and you are recalling a destination effect with a two-channel object.</td>
<td>The second channel of the object will cut on (to its final state) at the start of the transition and the first channel will interpolate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The source effect has two channels and you are recalling a destination effect with a two-channel object.</td>
<td>Both channels will transition to the destination effect and be made part of an object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Storage Devices

This section provides instructions for storing and recalling Synergy 100 MD registers on a storage device, such as the internal hard drive of the switcher or a USB Drive.

Disk Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for saving and recalling switcher setups.

Disk Menu Tree
Saving Registers

For archive purposes, and to keep safe backup copies of your valuable switcher setups, it is recommended that you store your setups and registers to a storage device. The internal hard drive is capable of storing all categories of Synergy setup registers.

The following is a list of memory registers and their corresponding file names:

- **Memory Registers** (all 100) are stored in the file `MEMORYS.XML`.
- **Personality Registers** are stored in the file `PERS.XML`.
- **Installation Registers** are stored in the file `INSTALL.XML`.
- **Wipes Registers** (Squeeze & Tease MD) are stored in the file `ST3DSEQ.SYN`.
- **All Individual Memories Registers** are stored in the files `MEM##.SYN`, which identifies a regular switcher snapshot. Note that `##` represents the number of the memory register.

**Note**

Synergy files are designed in a proprietary compressed format that can only be read by Synergy switchers. However, the files can be copied and saved on a computer.

Saving Registers to a Storage Device

The **Disk Menu** allows you to **Recall** or **Store** various files to a specific drive and set. The **Current Switcher Setup Chosen** item indicates which set and which drive is being stored to or recalled from.

Use the following procedure to save registers to a storage device:

1. Navigate to the **Disk Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press 5. **Disk** to display the **Disk Menu**.
2. Press 0. **Dest/Source** to display the **Dest/Source Menu**.

   ![Dest/Source Menu]

3. Select the storage device you want to use to store your registers to as follows:
   - Press 0. **Dest/Source**.
   - Use the  and  buttons to select the storage device you want to use. You can select between the following:
     - **Hard Drive** — This option will allow you to store the files on the internal hard drive.
~ **USB** — This option will allow you to recall the files from a USB Drive. You must wait 5 seconds after inserting the USB Drive into the USB Port before you can save or recall files. Refer to the section “Notes on Using a USB Drive” on page 9–16 for further information.

4. Select a setup, or location, for the storage of the files as follows:
   - Press **1. Set Names**.
   - Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select the Setup you want to use. You can select from SETUP (00) to SETUP (99).

5. Press **BACK** to display the Disk Menu.

6. Press **1. Store** to display the Store Menu.

7. Select the category of registers that you want to save to a storage device. You can select between the following:
   - Press **1. Store Memories** to store only Memory Registers.
   - Press **2. Store Personality** to store only Personality Registers.
   - Press **3. Store Installation** to store only Installation Registers.
   - Press **4. Store 3D Wipes** to store only 3D Sequence Registers.
   - Press **5. Store Indiv 3D Wipes** to store a specific 3D Sequence Register.
   - Press **6. Store Bus Map** to store only the Bus Map Register. A Bus Map defines the video source, or internal video signal, that is assigned to each crosspoint button.

8. Confirm saving the selected category of registers to a storage device or cancel the procedure as follows:
   - Press **0. Yes** to save the selected category of registers.
   - Press **1. No** to exit the menus, without saving the selected category of registers to a storage device.

This completes the procedure for storing your setups to a storage device.
Recalling Registers

The Synergy 100 MD switcher allows you to recall all categories of registers from a storage device, or you can recall the desired individual category.

**Caution**

If you are going to recall *any* set of registers (e.g., memory), ensure that your current on-line set of registers are stored to another storage device or SETUP. If you have *not* stored them, they will be overwritten when you recall the files.

Use the following procedure to recall registers from a storage device:

1. Navigate to the **Disk Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **5. Disk** to display the **Disk Menu**.
2. Press **0. Dest/Source** to display the **Dest/Source Menu**.

3. Select the storage device you want to use to store your registers to as follows:
   - Press **0. Dest/Source**.
   - Use the **↓** and **↑** buttons to select the storage device you want to use. You can select between the following:
     - **Hard Drive** — This option will allow you to recall the files from the internal hard drive.
     - **USB** — This option will allow you to recall the files from a USB Drive. You must wait 5 seconds after inserting the USB Drive into the USB Port before you can save or recall files. Refer to the section “Notes on Using a USB Drive” on page 9–16 for further information.
4. Select a setup, or location, as follows:
   - Press **1. Set Names**.
   - Use the **↓** and **↑** buttons to select the **Setup** you want to use. You can select from **SETUP (00)** to **SETUP (99)**.
5. Press **BACK** to display the **Disk Menu**.
6. Press 2. Recall to display the Recall Menu.

7. Select the category of registers that you want to recall from the storage device. You can select between the following:
   - Press 1. Recall Memories to recall only Memory Registers.
   - Press 2. Recall Personality to recall only Personality Registers.
   - Press 3. Recall Installation to recall only Installation Registers.
   - Press 4. Recall 3D Wipes to recall only 3D Wipe Registers.
   - Press 5. Recall Indiv 3D Wipe to recall a specific 3D Wipe Register.
   - Press 6. Recall Bus Map to recall only the Bus Map. A Bus Map defines the video source, or internal video signal, that is assigned to each crosspoint button.

8. Confirm the recall of the selected category of registers from a storage device or cancel the procedure as follows:
   - Press 0. Yes to recall the selected category of registers.
   - Press 1. No to exit the menus, without making any changes. The system returns to the previously stored settings.

This completes the procedure for recalling your setups from a storage device.

**Notes on Using a USB Drive**

The Synergy 100 USB Port enables you to store and recall complete switcher setups including memory functions, switcher personalities, installation registers, and more, to a USB Drive.

**Important**

A decrease in performance will result from storing more than one set of Synergy files on your USB Drive.

Consider the following notes when using a USB Drive:

- Write protect should be disabled on any USB Drive.
- All Synergy files must be stored in the Root directory of the USB Drive.
- Only DOS or Windows™ partitions in the USB Drive directory are supported.
- You must wait 5 seconds after inserting the USB Drive into the USB port before you can save or recall files.
- A delay can be expected when saving files to a USB Drive with more than half of the available memory allocated.
Peripheral Control and More

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information and instructions for using peripheral equipment with the Synergy 100 MD switcher. The following topics are discussed:

- GPI Control
- Using the Aux Bus
- Remote Aux Panels
- Preview Overlay
- Center Overlay
- Safe Title Overlay
- Editor Interface
- Copy and Swap Functions
GPI Control

The GPI function of the Synergy 100 MD switcher provides 10 input ports, each of which can be programmed for specific functions. A GPI input pulse can be associated with a specific area and button on the switcher, which triggers when that pulse is received from an external device.

Use the following procedure to enable the GPI input control function:

1. Navigate to the **Effects Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.
   - Press **1. GPIs** to toggle the GPI function **On** or **Off**.

   This completes the procedure for enabling the GPI function **On** or **Off**.

2. Press **1. GPIs** to toggle the GPI function **On** or **Off**.

   Refer to Chapter 8, “**Output Configuration**” of the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* for more information on configuring your GPIs.
Using the Aux Bus

The Synergy 100 MD switcher provides 10 Aux Buses that can be used to route video to monitors, Still Stores, as well as other devices. The video sources for these Aux Buses are selected using the Key Bus and the special Preset Bus crosspoints on the control panel.

Before you attempt to use the Aux Bus, ensure that each Aux Bus is properly connected to the desired external devices. Consult with your facility engineer, who can provide you with an Auxiliary Output Worksheet that lists the Aux Bus outputs and their destinations.

Use the following procedure to assign a crosspoint to an Aux Bus.

1. Enter Aux Bus mode as follows:
   - Press and hold the left SEL button in the Effects Control Group until AUX# appears on the display in the Effects Control Group. The “#” represents the Aux Bus that is currently selected.

2. Press the pattern button in the Effects Control Group that corresponds to the Aux Bus that you want to assign a crosspoint output to. You can select between AUX0 through AUX9.

Effects Control Groups
Pattern Buttons — Aux Bus Selection

The Crosspoint that is currently assigned to the selected Aux Bus will flash on the Key Bus.

3. Select the crosspoint button on the Key Bus that you want to assign to the Aux Bus.

4. Exit Aux Bus mode as follows:
   - Press and hold the left SEL button in the Effects Control Group until the AUX# is no longer displayed.

This completes the procedure for assigning a crosspoint to an Aux Bus.
Remote Aux Panels

Remote Aux Panels are one-piece panels that provide remote control (or monitoring) capability of one (or more) of the Aux Buses on the Synergy 100 MD switcher. These panels are typically mounted close to the destination devices to which they route their sources. Video does not flow through the panels — the actual Aux Bus outputs originate from the frame using separate wiring paths to the destination devices.

Using an Assignable Remote Aux Panel

An Assignable Remote Aux Panel controls or monitors all Aux Bus outputs. Assignable Remote Aux Panels also include an Aux Bus Assign group that is used to select which Aux Bus the panel is controlling. All panel types include a bright “on-air” or “active” LED that indicates (when lit) that the Aux Bus controls a signal that forms a part of the program output.

In addition to crosspoints, the panels include dedicated “special” crosspoint buttons for Preview, Clean Feed, and Program. When the Synergy 100 control panel is tracking sources being routed by a Remote Aux Panel, the MLE PV, CLN FEED, and PGM crosspoints on the Remote Aux Panel correspond to the first, second, and third Preview Bus crosspoints, respectively.

Assignable Remote Aux Panel

A single Remote Aux Panel can be configured for any of the of the 10 Aux Bus outputs. Each output can be placed in one of two modes:

- **Regular Mode** — This mode places the specific Aux Bus in Regular (Normal) Mode. The Bus can be selected and sources can be changed from the Synergy 100 control panel.

- **Follow Mode** — This mode places the specific Aux Bus in Follow (View Only) Mode. You can select the Bus in the Aux Bus Assign Group and follow what crosspoints are being selected remotely, but you cannot change crosspoints. In Follow Mode, the Bus is controlled from another location.

Consult with your facility engineer to learn what mode has been programmed for each Remote Aux Panel in your facility. Refer to the chapter “Remote Aux Panels” of the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual, for instructions on configuring your Remote Aux Panels.
Operating a Remote Aux Panel

Before attempting to use your Assignable Remote Aux Panel, ensure that it is properly connected to the Synergy 100 MD switcher.

Use the following procedure to operate a Remote Aux Panel in Regular Mode:

1. Ensure that the Aux Bus that is being controlled by the Remote Aux Panel is routed to the desired location or device.

   **Note**  
   If the Remote Aux Panel is in Follow Mode, you will not be able to change the output assigned from the control panel. You will be able to view different Aux Buses; however, you will not be able to alter the output.

2. Press **Assign 1** through **Assign 10** to assign the Remote Aux Panel to the corresponding Aux Bus. Refer to the following table to determine which Aux Bank and Bus is mapped to each button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remote Aux Panel — ASSIGN Buttons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BLACK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASSIGN 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   | Aux 0 | Aux 1 | Aux 2 | Aux 3 | Aux 4 | Aux 5 | Aux 6 | Aux 7 | Aux 8 |

   **Remote Aux Panel — ASSIGN Buttons**

3. Select the signal that you want to feed to the Aux Bus output BNC by using one of the following options:

   - Press a crosspoint button to route the associated video signal to the Aux Bus output BNC.
     
     ~ If the panel is configured to use shifted crosspoints, hold down the **SHIFT** button on the Remote Aux Panel, then press the desired crosspoint to select the shifted video signal.
     
     ~ Panels that are not configured to use shifted crosspoints assign the **SHIFT** button as the last of the regular crosspoints.
   - Selecting **BKGD Color** (Shifted button 1) on a Remote Aux Panel routes the Program output to the Aux Bus.
   - Press **CLN FEED** to route the Clean Feed output to the Aux Bus.
   - Press **PGM** to route the Program output to the Aux Bus.

   **Note**  
   The special crosspoints, such as **PV** and **CLN FEED**, do not support the shifted function.

This completes the procedure to operate a Remote Aux Panel in Regular Mode.
Preview Overlay

The Preview Overlay function allows you to place a graphic or menu over the selected preview source. The preview overlay includes the following:

- Center Overlay
- Safe Title Overlay

Center Overlay

The Center Overlay places cross hairs on the preview monitor to indicate the center of the picture, as shown below:

This overlay is useful for aligning text and other information (both horizontally and vertically).

Use the following procedure to turn the center overlay on or off:

1. Navigate to the Effects Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 0. Effects to display the Effects Menu.

2. Press Center to toggle the Center Overlay On or Off.

This completes the procedure for toggling the Center Overlay on or off.
Safe Title Overlay

The Safe Title Overlay places a SMPTE standard Safe Title and Safe Action grid on the preview monitor.

- **Safe Title** — The Safe Title grid (inner box) outlines the area within which the vast majority of home TV sets will be able to read text.
- **Safe Action** — The Safe Action grid (outer box) outlines the region within which viewers should be able to follow action on the screen.

Use the following procedure to turn the safe title overlay on or off:

1. Navigate to the **Effects Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.

```
Effects Menu

0. Editor     On    5. UltraChrome Parameters
1. GPIs       Off   6. Global-Store
2. Center     Off   7. MultiDSK
3. Safe Title Off
4. Reserved

MENU  100 10 1  SEL
Exit Previous Down Up Accept
```

2. Press **3. Safe Title** to toggle the Safe Title Overlay **On** or **Off**.

This completes the procedure for toggling the Safe Title Overlay on or off.
Editor Interface

The **Editor** option allows the Synergy 100 MD switcher to be controlled by an editing system using the GVG 100, GVG 200, or GVG 4000 protocol. The **Editor** software option must be enabled.

**Note**

The Editor Option must be installed in order to be able to interface with an editing system. Refer to Chapter 6 “Software Upgrades and Options” in the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* to ensure that the **Editor option** is installed. If not, please contact Ross Video Technical Support for details.

Use the following procedure to turn the Editor feature on or off:

1. Navigate to the **Effects Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.

2. Press **0. Editor** to toggle the Editor function **On** or **Off**.

This completes the procedure for toggling the Editor on or off.

**Note**

The **Editor** can also be enabled by pressing (or double-pressing) the **MENU** button in the **System Control Group**. Refer to Chapter 10 “Completing Setup” in the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* for more information.

Refer to Chapter 9, “Communication Setup” of the *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* for more information on setting up an editor with your Synergy 100 MD switcher.
Copy and Swap Functions

The Copy and Swap functions allow you to copy or swap various settings from Key to Key. For all copy functions, the destination-source rule applies. You select the destination for the copy and press and hold the appropriate button. With the destination selected, press the source button to copy the information.

Note
You cannot copy or swap Key settings with the Downstream Keyer.

The following copy and swap functions are available:

- **Copy Key** — This function allows you to copy the contents of one Keyer to the other Keyer within the Effects Keyers Group.
- **Key Swap** — This function allows you to swap the entire contents of one Keyer with the contents of the other Keyer within the Effects Keyer Group.

Copy Key

The Copy Key function allows you to copy the entire contents of Key 1 to Key 2 in the Effects Keyers Group.

Note
You can only copy Key 1 one into Key 2.

Use the following procedure to copy the contents of Key 1 into Key 2:

1. Set up Key 1. This will assign the Effects Keyers Group to the Key you want to copy from.
2. Press and hold the Key Type button of the Key you want to copy.
3. Press KEY2 in the Effects Keyers Group to copy the contents of Key 1 to Key 2.

Note
When you copy a Keyer to another Keyer, the entire contents (except matte fill color) of the source Keyer is copied to the destination, including the selected Key crosspoint.

4. Release both buttons.
This completes the procedure for copying Key 1 into Key 2.
Key Swap

The Key Swap function allows you to swap the entire contents of one Keyer with the contents of the other Keyer in the Effects Keyers Group.

Use the following procedure to swap a key:

1. Press and hold the KEY2 button in the Effects Keyers Group.
2. Press KEY1 in the Transition Group.
3. Release both buttons.

The Keyers swap their contents, as indicated by a pop-up message that appears on the preview monitor.

Note

This function can also be performed in the reverse order, pressing KEY1 first, followed by the KEY2 button.

This completes the procedure for swapping keys.
Global-Store

In This Chapter

This chapter provides instructions for transferring images to and from the hard drive of your Synergy 100 MD switcher using drag and drop, and how to use these images in the internal Global-Store.

The following topics are discussed:

- Preparing for Image Transfers
- Creating a Connection to Your Switcher
- Transferring Still Images and Animations
- Global-Store
Preparing for Image Transfers

Images are transferred to and from the Synergy 100 MD switcher using the WebDAV protocol. Stills and logos are stored on the switcher hard drive, and can be transferred to other control-room devices via Ethernet.

Image Specifications

Images must meet the following specifications and naming conventions:

**File type**

Images for the Synergy 100 MD switcher can be created in any graphic package that outputs compressed or uncompressed Targa files.

**Still Image File Size**

Still images can be created as either a 24-bit or 32-bit file:

- 24-bit file contains no alpha component
- 32-bit file contains an alpha component

Maximum size of a Still image single frame:

- 1080i format - 1920 pixels by 1080 lines
- 1080psf format - 1920 pixels by 1080 lines
- 720p format - 1280 pixels by 720 lines

**Animated Image File Sizes**

Animated images should be created as a 32-bit file with an alpha component.

Maximum size of an Animated image single frame:

- 1080i format - 1920 pixels by 1080 pixels
- 1080psf format - 1920 pixels by 1080 pixels
- 720p format - 1280 pixels by 720 pixels
- Animation - 128 MB maximum

**Storage Capacity**

The number of images that can be stored depends upon the size of the image being used. Full screen 1080i images take 5 times the storage of a 480i clip. However, a small, animated logo in 1080i will take much less storage than a full screen 480i clip. The MediaCache for Global-Store option increases the RAM capacity from 256MB to 1GB. This allows storage of up to 4 seconds of uncompressed 1080i playout or 25 Seconds of 480i playout.
Refer to the following table for approximate storage capacity on the hard drive, based on format:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Approximate Size (Bytes)</th>
<th>Number of Stills</th>
<th>1 GB Video (Seconds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>256 MB</td>
<td>1 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080i 60 / 59.94 Hz</td>
<td>6,220,844</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080i 60 / 59.94 Hz with Alpha</td>
<td>8,294,444</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080i 50 Hz</td>
<td>6,220,844</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080i 50 Hz with Alpha</td>
<td>8,294,444</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080psf 24 / 23.97 Hz</td>
<td>6,220,844</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080psf 24 / 23.97 Hz with Alpha</td>
<td>8,294,444</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080p 24 Hz</td>
<td>6,220,844</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080p 24 Hz with Alpha</td>
<td>8,294,444</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720p 60 / 59.94 Hz</td>
<td>2,765,339</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720p 60 / 59.94 Hz with Alpha</td>
<td>3,686,939</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720p 50 Hz</td>
<td>2,765,339</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720p 50 Hz with Alpha</td>
<td>3,686,939</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>576i 50 Hz</td>
<td>1,244,699</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>690</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>576i 50 Hz with Alpha</td>
<td>1,659,419</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>518</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480i 60 Hz</td>
<td>1,050,299</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>818</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480i 60 Hz with Alpha</td>
<td>1,400,219</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

File Naming Conventions

This section describes how to properly name files, directories, animated images and folders.

File Names

All file and directory names can be up to 12 characters (not including the file extension). If the name has over 12 characters, the file or directory will not appear on the switcher panel. The filename can contain letters, numbers, and spaces. The characters ! @ # * ( ) / , (comma) ? ' (apostrophe) “ (quotation mark) cannot be used in the filename.

Animated Images

You must append an underscore (_) and a frame number to the filename before the .tga extension. The frame number must meet the following criteria:

- Each frame number must have between two and five digits.
- Each frame number must have the same number of digits (i.e., you must use leading zeros to pad the frame number length).
• The first frame number must be a series of zeros. Subsequent frames are numbered sequentially.

The example below shows the filenames for an animation called DTVB.

**Sample file naming for an image with 90 frames:**

- DTVB_0000.tga
- DTVB_0001.tga
- DTVB_0002.tga
- ...
- DTVB_0090.tga

**Folders**

Folder names can be up to 12 characters. If the name has over 12 characters, the folder, and any files contained within it, will not appear on the switcher panel. The filename can contain letters, numbers, and spaces. The characters ! @ # * ( ) / , (comma) ? ' (apostrophe) “ (quotation mark) cannot be used in the filename.
Creating a Connection to Your Switcher

Transferring still images and animations from your computer to your Synergy 100 MD switcher is accomplished just like you would copy or move files and folders on your computer (drag and drop). Before you can transfer files, however, you must establish a connection between your computer and switcher using the WebDAV protocol. WebDAV (Web-based Distributed Authoring and Versioning) is a set of HTTP protocol extensions for collaborative managing and editing of files on remote servers.

Important

The steps to create a WebDAV connection between your computer and switcher differ for each operating system and network configuration. If you need assistance in establishing a WebDAV connection, contact your IT department. The information provided below will allow them to successfully establish a connection.

Drag and drop of still images and animations between the switcher and a computer using the WebDAV protocol has been tested on the following operating systems:

- Microsoft® Windows® 98
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional with Service Pack 1
- Neon Library Version 0.24 or later, used by WebDAV clients such as Konqueror, Nautilus, and Cadaver
- Microsoft Windows 2000
- Mac® OS X 10.4 or later

The WebDAV mount point for your switcher is `http://switcher_ip_address/stills` where `switcher_ip_address` is the network TCP/IP address of your Synergy 100 MD switcher. For example, if your switcher has an IP address of 192.168.1.10, the WebDAV mount point would be `http://192.168.1.10/stills`. Refer to the section “Network Setup” in the chapter, “Software Upgrades and Options”, of the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for details on setting or determining the IP address of your switcher.

Note

Windows XP requires you to add a “/#” to the end of the address when you access the switcher. For example, you would enter “http://switcher_ip_address/stills/#”.

The user name and password for accessing the mount point is the same as you use for upgrading your switcher software. By default, the user name is `user` and the password is `password`. Refer to the section “Changing the Synergy MD/X Web Interface Account” in the chapter, “Software Upgrades and Options” of the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for details on changing the user name and password.

You may wish to fill-in the table on the next page with the appropriate settings for your switcher to make it easier to re-create the WebDAV connection at a later date.
Alternate Connection Method

If you are unable to create a WebDAV connection to your switcher, you can create an FTP (File Transfer Protocol) connection to copy stills and animations.

The FTP mount point for your switcher is `ftp://switcher_ip_address` where `switcher_ip_address` is the network TCP/IP address of your Synergy MD/X switcher. For example, if your switcher has an IP address of 192.168.1.10, the FTP mount point would be `ftp://192.168.1.10/` Refer to the section “Network Setup” in the chapter, “Software Upgrades and Options”, of the Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual for details on setting or determining the IP address of your switcher.

The user name and password for accessing the FTP mount point are:

- username: `user`
- password: `password`

Note that these are not the same settings you use for accessing your switcher using the Synergy MD/X Web Interface. Even if you have changed the username or password for the Web Interface, the FTP user name and password does not change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Switcher Setting</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switcher IP Address</td>
<td>. . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switcher WebDAV Mount point</td>
<td>(insert IP address from above)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Transferring Still Images and Animations

Copying images to and from your switcher is just like copying files and folders on your computer. Once the WebDAV connection is established, you can drag and drop files and folders between your computer and switcher. Any computer with the WebDAV connection to your switcher can be used to drag and drop still images and animations.

**Important**

You should only use the WebDAV connection to transfer files between your switcher and computer. If you use the connection to rename, move, or copy images between directories on your switcher, the associated image properties will **not** be updated. Use the switcher panel to rename or move images between directories. Refer to the section “Renaming a Still” on page 11–11 and the section “Managing Stills and Directories” on page 11–13 for information.

Copying Still Images and Animations to your Switcher

Before copying images or animations to your switcher, ensure that you have named them properly. Refer to the section “File Naming Conventions” on page 11–3 for details.

Use the following procedure to copy still images and animations to your switcher:

1. Establish a WebDAV connection between your computer and switcher. Refer to the section “Creating a Connection to Your Switcher” on page 11–5 for details.

2. Open the connection to your switcher in a file-manager type window on your computer (different operating systems have different file management systems).

3. If you wish to create a sub-directory to store your images, do so now. Consult your IT department or operating system documentation if you need help creating directories.

4. Navigate to the sub-directory you wish to store your images in.

5. Open a second file-manager type window on your computer and navigate to the directory where the images or animations you wish to copy are stored.

6. Drag the image and animation files from this window to the window showing the contents of the destination directory on your switcher.

This completes the procedure for copying still images and animations to your switcher.

**Note**

You can only cascade 4 sub-directories from the root /stills directory.

**Note**

Some operating systems require you to press keys on your keyboard while dragging files to indicate you are copying rather than moving them. Consult your IT department or operating system documentation for details on your installation.
Copying Images and Animations from your Switcher

Before copying images or animations to your switcher, ensure that you have named them properly. Refer to the section “File Naming Conventions” on page 11–3 for details.

Use the following procedure to copy still images and animations from your switcher:

1. Establish a WebDAV connection between your computer and switcher. Refer to the section “Creating a Connection to Your Switcher” on page 11–5 for details.

2. Open the connection to your switcher in a file-manager type window on your computer (different operating systems have different file management systems) and navigate to the sub-directory where the images or animations you wish to copy are stored.

3. Open a second file-manager type window on your computer and navigate to the location on your computer where you wish to store the images or animations. Also, if you wish to create a sub-directory to store your images, do so now.

4. Drag the image and animation files from the window showing the contents of your switcher to the window showing the contents of the sub-directory on your computer.

This completes the procedure for copying still images and animations from your switcher.

Legacy Image and Animation Files

Important

This section only applies if you have upgraded your switcher from a version prior to 5.0.

Versions of Synergy MD/X software prior to 5.0, used a proprietary software package called ImageMover to handle the copying of still images and animations between your computer and switcher. ImageMover automatically appended the appropriate suffix to each file and also performed some conversions during the copy resulting in extra files being created on the switcher that are no longer used. These files were of the type:

- *.sti and *.stp — These files were associated with still images
- *.ali and *.alp — These files were associated with alpha channels

If you used ImageMover with previous versions of Synergy MD/X software, your switcher will likely contain some of these legacy files. You may delete them as they are no longer required for operation with software versions 5.0 or greater. Note, however, that if you delete these files and then revert to a switcher software version prior to 5.0, your Global-Store still images and animations will no longer be available.

Operating Tip

Some operating systems do not show file extensions by default. Enable the viewing of file extensions so you can differentiate between actual images and the *.sti, *.stp, *.ali, and *.atp legacy files. Consult your IT Department or operating system documentation for assistance.
Global-Store

Global-Store consists of three independent channels of stills that are available as inputs. Hundreds of full screen stills and logos can be stored on the hard drive, and to the Global-Store cache as needed. Global-Store comes standard with 256 Megabytes of RAM storage. This translates to at least 30 full screen 1080i images with key. The number of images increases considerably when smaller images like logos are stored. Thousands of additional images can be loaded from the system hard drive.

Global-Store Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for setting up using your three Global-Stores.
Selecting a Still for a Global-Store Channel

Selecting a still image allows you to assign a particular still from a directory on the hard drive and a Global-Store Channel. This image can then be taken on-air by selecting one of the three Global-Store crosspoints.

Use the following procedure to assign a still to a Global-Store channel:

1. Navigate to the Global-Store Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 0. Effects to display the Effects Menu.

2. Press 0. Select to display the Select Menu.

3. Select the Global-Store channel you want to assign a still to as follows:
   - Press 0. Channel.
   - Use the \( \downarrow \) and \( \uparrow \) buttons to select the desired channel (1-3).

   **Note**  
   As you select the channel you will notice that the Global-Store in the top right corner changes to indicate what Global-Store channel you are working in.

   - Press the right SEL button to accept the new setting.
4. Assign a still to the selected Global-Store channel as follows.
   • Move the positioner up or down to select the still or directory you want.
   • Press 1. Select.

   This completes the procedure for assigning a still to a Global-Store channel.

Renaming a Still

Use the following procedure to rename a still:

1. Navigate to the Global-Store Menu as follows:
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 0. Effects to display the Effects Menu.
   • Press 6. Global-Store to display the Global-Store Menu.

   Operating Tip

   To navigate between directories, use the positioner to select the directory you want to go down into and press 1. Select, or press the 4. Up one level button to go up to the higher level directory. The change will be shown in the Current directory:/ line at the bottom.

   • Press 1. Select.

   This completes the procedure for assigning a still to a Global-Store channel.

2. Press 0. Select to display the Select Menu.

   Operating Tip

   To navigate between directories, use the positioner to select the directory you want to go down into and press 1. Select, or press the 4. Up one level button to go up to the higher level directory. The change will be shown in the Current directory:/ line at the bottom.

   • Press 2. Rename to display the Rename Menu.

   Note

   You cannot have multiple files of the same name in the same directory.
Cancelling a Still from a Global-Store Channel

Cancelling a still image allows you to clear a particular still from a Global-Store channel. Use the following procedure to cancel a still from a Global-Store channel:

1. Navigate to the **Global-Store Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.
   - Press **6. Global-Store** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

   This completes the procedure for renaming a still.
Global-Store — Main Menu

2. Press **0. Select** to display the **Select Menu**.

Global-Store — Select Menu

3. Select the Global-Store channel you want to clear a still to as follows:
   - Press **0. Channel**.
   - Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select the desired channel (1-3).

   **Note**
   As you select the channel you will notice that the Global-Store in the top right corner changes to indicate what Global-Store channel you are working in.

   - Press the right **SEL** button to accept the new setting.

4. Press **5. Cancel Still** to remove the currently loaded still from the selected channel.

This completes the procedure for clearing a still from a Global-Store channel.

Managing Stills and Directories

The **Manage Menu** allows you to manage your stills and directories on the hard drive.

**Creating a Directory**

Use the following procedure to create a directory:

1. Navigate to the **Global-Store Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.
• Press **6. Global-Store** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Global-Store</th>
<th>Global-Store 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Select</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Manage</td>
<td>Still1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Properties</td>
<td>Number: 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Capture Screen</td>
<td>Size: 1920×1080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Reserved</td>
<td>Alpha: No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Assign as Default</td>
<td>Frames: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. View Default</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Global-Store — Main Menu**

2. Press **1. Manage** to display the **Manage Menu**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Select Directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Delete all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Create Directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Reserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Up one level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Global-Store — Manage Menu**

3. Select the directory that you want to create a new directory in as follows:

- Use the positioner to select the directory you want to go down into and press **1. Select Directory**, or press the **5. Up one level** button to go up to the higher level directory. The change will be shown in the **Current directory:** line at the bottom.

- Press **0. Select Directory**.

4. Press **2. Create Directory** to display the **Directory Menu**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You can only cascade 4 sub-directories from the root directory. If you have selected a sub-directory that is 4 sub-directories down from the root directory, the <strong>2. Create Directory</strong> button will appear gray and you will not be able to create another sub-directory at that level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You cannot have multiple directories of the same name in the same parent directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Enter the name of the new directory as follows:
   • Use the positioner to scroll through the letters and highlight the letter you want to use. Any invalid characters on the same line as the currently highlighted character will appear dark grey and will be skipped as you scroll through the letters.
   • Use the 0 button to select the previous letter in the name.
   • Use the 1 button to select the next letter in the name.
   • Use the 2 button to insert a space.

6. Press 3. Accept to accept the new name and create the directory.

**Note**

- Certain punctuation characters may not be used in a name: ! @ # & * ( ) / , (comma) ? ' (apostrophe) " (quotation marks).

- Any space characters will be converted to underscore characters (_) when the system accepts the name.

This completes the procedure for creating a directory.

**Deleting All Stills in a Directory**

Use the following procedure to delete all stills in a directory:

1. Navigate to the Global-Store Menu as follows:
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 0. Effects to display the Effects Menu.
   • Press 6. Global-Store to display the Global-Store Menu.
2. Press 1. Manage to display the Manage Menu.

3. Select the directory that you want to delete all the stills from:

   To navigate between directories, use the positioner to select the directory you want to go down into and press 1. Select Directory, or press the 5. Up one level button to go up to the higher level directory. The change will be shown in the Current directory:/ line at the bottom.

   • Use the positioner to select the directory you want to delete.
   • Press 0. Select Directory.


This completes the procedure for deleting all the stills in the current directory.

**Deleting an Individual Still or Directory**

Use the following procedure to delete a still or directory:

1. Navigate to the Global-Store Menu as follows:
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 0. Effects to display the Effects Menu.
   • Press 6. Global-Store to display the Global-Store Menu.
2. Press **0. Select** to display the **Select Menu**.

3. Delete a still or directory as follows:

   To navigate between directories, use the positioner to select the directory you want to go down into and press **1. Select**, or press the **4. Up one level** button to go up to the higher level directory. The change will be shown in the **Current directory:**/ line at the bottom.

   - Use the positioner to select the still or directory that you want to delete.
   - Press **3. Delete**.

   A confirmation screen will be displayed.

   This completes the procedure for deleting an individual still or directory.

### On Air Properties

The on-air properties menu allows you to adjust the position, clip, gain, display mode, animation and auto dissolve attributes of the selected still.

### Adjusting On Air Properties

Use the following procedure to adjust the on-air properties of the stills in a Global-Store:

1. Navigate to the **Global-Store Menu** as follows:

   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.
• Press 6. **Global-Store** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

![Global-Store Menu](image)

2. Press 0. **Select** to display the **Select Menu**.

![Select Menu](image)

3. Select the Global-Store channel you want to assign the still to as follows:

   - Press 0. **Channel**.
   - Use the ◄ and ► buttons to select the desired channel (1-3).

   **Note**
   
   As you select the channel you will notice that the Global-Store in the top right corner changes to indicate what Global-Store channel you are working in.

4. Select the still you want to adjust the on-air properties for as follows:

   **Operating Tip**
   
   To navigate between directories, use the positioner to select the directory you want to go down into and press 1. **Select**, or press the 4. **Up one level** button to go up to the higher level directory. The change will be shown in the **Current directory:**/ line at the bottom.

   - Use the positioner to select the still you want to set as default.
   - Press 1. **Select** to assign the selected still to the Global-Store channel.
     A loading progress indicator displays while the still is loading.

5. Press **BACK** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.
6. Press **2. Properties** to display the **On Air Properties Menu**.

   - **On Air Properties**
     - 0. Position
     - 1. Shaped
     - 2. Display Mode
     - 3. Reserved
     - 4. Animation
     - 5. Store Properties as Default

   Use Positioner or HUE, SAT, LUM to modify

   **Global-Store — On Air Properties Menu**

7. Adjust the **Position** of the stills as follows:
   - Press **0. Position**.

   - **On Air Properties**
     - 0. Position
     - 1. Shaped
     - 2. Display Mode
     - 3. Reserved
     - 4. Animation
     - 5. Store Properties as Default

   X-Posn: 0
   Y-Posn: 0

   Use Positioner or HUE, SAT, LUM to modify

   **Global-Store — Position Menu**

   - Move the positioner **Left** or **Right** to adjust the **X-Position** of the still image.
   - Move the positioner **Up** or **Down** to adjust the **Y-Position** of the still image.

8. Define the still as shaped or unshaped as follows:
   - Press **1. Shaped**.

   - **On Air Properties**
     - 0. Position
     - 1. Shaped
     - 2. Display Mode
     - 3. Reserved
     - 4. Animation
     - 5. Store Properties as Default

   Shaped/Unshaped: Shaped

   Use Positioner or HUE, SAT, LUM to modify

   **Global-Store — Shaped/Unshaped Menu**
• Move the positioner **Up** or **Down** to select the **Shaped/Unshaped** mode you want to use. You can select between the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>Select <strong>Unshaped</strong> if you are unsure about which mode to use. Unshaped allows the switcher to match the alpha and fill signals that the source device is generating.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>~ Shaped — Select this option to have the switcher perform an <em>additive</em> Key. With Shaped Keys, the Key Alpha cuts a hole based on the monochrome value of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into either white or black, giving the Key a hard edge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ Unshaped — Select this option to have the switcher perform a <em>multiplicative</em> Key. With an unshaped Key, the Key Alpha cuts a hole based on the gradient values of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into transparency levels, giving the Key a soft edge. Unshaped Key alphas can also be considered true linear alphas.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Adjust the **Display Mode** of the still as follows:

• Press **2. Display Mode**.

• Move the positioner **Left** or **Right** to select the **Field/Frame** display mode you want to use. You can select between the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>If you are operating in a progressive scan video format, the <strong>Field1</strong> and <strong>Field2</strong> options are not available.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>~ Frame — Select this option to have the entire frame of the still image displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ Field1 — Select this option to have field 1 of the still image displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ Field2 — Select this option to have field 2 of the still image displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ Swap — Select this option to have field 1 and field 2 of the image swapped when they are displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Set the **Animation** characteristics of an animation as follows:

• Press **4. Animation**.
Global-Store — Animation Menu

- Move the positioner **Left** or **Right** to turn **Looping** on (**Yes**) or off (**No**). When looping is set to **Yes** an animation will start over at frame one when it finished.
- Move the positioner **Up** or **Down** to turn **Reverse** on (**Yes**) or off (**No**). When reverse is set to **Yes** an animation will play in reverse when it reaches the end.
- Twist the positioner knob **Clockwise** or **Counter-Clockwise** to turn **AutoPlay** on (**Yes**) or off (**No**). When **AutoPlay** is set to **Yes** an animation automatically start to play when it is taken on-air.

This completes the procedure for adjusting the on-air properties of the stills in a Global-Store.

**Storing Default Global-Store Properties**

The on-air properties menu allows you to adjust the position, clip, gain, display mode, animation and auto dissolve attributes of the selected still. You can also set any changes you make to the still as default properties for that still.

Use the following procedure to store default still properties:

1. Navigate to the **Global-Store Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.
   - Press **6. Global-Store** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

   ![Global-Store Menu](image)

   Use Positioner or HUE, SAT, LUM to modify

2. Press **0. Select** to display the **Select Menu**.

   ![Select Menu](image)
3. Select the Global-Store channel you want to assign the still to as follows:
   - Press **0. Channel**.
   - Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select the desired channel (1-3).

**Note**
As you select the channel you will notice that the Global-Store in the top right corner changes to indicate what Global-Store channel you are working in.

4. Select the still you want to adjust the on-air properties for as follows:

**Operating Tip**
To navigate between directories, use the positioner to select the directory you want to go down into and press **1. Select**, or press the **4. Up one level** button to go up to the higher level directory. The change will be shown in the **Current directory:/** line at the bottom.

   - Use the positioner to select the still you want to set as default.
   - Press **1. Select** to assign the selected still to the Global-Store channel.
   - A loading progress indicator displays while the still is loading.

5. Press **BACK** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

6. Press **2. Properties** to display the **On Air Properties Menu**.

7. Adjust the properties of the still as desired. Refer to the section “**Adjusting On Air Properties**” on page 11-17 for instructions on adjusting specific properties of the still.

8. Press **5. Store Properties as Default** to save the adjusted properties of the still as default for that still.
This completes the procedure to store default still properties.

**Default Stills**

You can assign a still as being default for each Global-Store channel. When a still is set as default, it will be loaded into the assigned Global-Store channel on startup.

**Assigning Default Stills**

Use the following procedure to assign a still as default to a Global-Store Channel.

1. Navigate to the **Global-Store Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.
   - Press **6. Global-Store** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

   ![Global-Store — Main Menu]

2. Press **0. Select** to display the **Select Menu**.

   ![Global-Store — Select Menu]

3. Select the Global-Store channel you want to assign a default still to as follows:
   - Press **0. Channel**.
   - Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select the desired channel (1-3).

   ![Note]

   **Note**
   As you select the channel you will notice that the Global-Store in the top right corner changes to indicate what Global-Store channel you are working in.

   - Press the right SEL button to accept the new setting.
4. Select the still you want to assign as default for the selected Global-Store channel.

To navigate between directories, use the positioner to select the directory you want to go down into and press **1. Select**, or press the **4. Up one level** button to go up to the higher level directory. The change will be shown in the **Current directory:** line at the bottom.

- Use the positioner to select the still you want to set as default.
- Press **1. Select** to assign the selected still to the Global-Store channel.
  A loading progress indicator displays while the still is loading.

5. Press **BACK** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

6. Press **5. Assign as Default** to display the **Assign as Default Menu**.

The new default still has been assigned to the selected Global-Store channel. This completes the procedure for assigning a still as default for a Global-Store channel.

**Viewing Default Stills**

Use the following procedure to view the current default still for a Global-Store Channel.

1. Navigate to the **Global-Store Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **0. Effects** to display the **Effects Menu**.
   - Press **6. Global-Store** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

2. Press **0. Select** to display the **Select Menu**.
3. Select the Global-Store channel you want to view the current default still for:
   - Press **0. Channel**.
   - Use the ® or © buttons to select the desired channel (1-3).
   - Press the right SEL button to accept the new setting.

4. Press **BACK** to display the **Global-Store Menu**.

5. Press **6. View Default** to display the **View Default Menu**.

This completes the procedure for viewing the default still for a Global-Store channel.

### Capturing Stills

You can capture a still from your Preview output and save it as a still for later use. The image is saved as **CAPTURE0.TGA**, and includes all the information in the Preview output except any preview overlays.

#### Note

If you wish to capture more than one still, you must transfer the last captured image file before capturing the next image because the file is overwritten each time a capture is performed. Refer to the section “**Transferring Still Images and Animations**” on page 11-7 for information on transferring files using a WebDAV connection.
Performing a Capture

Use the following procedure to capture a still from your Preview output as follows:

1. Navigate to the Global-Store Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 0. Effects to display the Effects Menu.

![Global-Store — Main Menu]

2. Ensure the correct source output for the still image you wish to capture is selected on the Preview Bus.

3. Press 3. Capture Screen to capture the still image. The softkey 3. Capture Screen is grayed out while the capture is in progress.

This completes the procedure to capture a still image from your Preview output.

Restarting the Global-Store

The System Resets Menu includes the Restarting Global-Store function. This function resets the Synergy 100 MD Global-Store and video processor. Use this procedure if you are experiencing difficulties with the Preview Overlay, Global-Store, or as directed by Ross Video Technical Support.

Use the following procedure to restart your Global-Store to factory defaults:

1. Navigate to the System Resets Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 7. Options to display the Options Menu.
   - Press 5. System Resets to display the System Resets Menu.

![System Resets Menu]
2. Press 4. **Restart Global-Store** to display the **Restart Global-Store Confirmation Screen**.

3. Press 0. **Confirm** to restart the Global-Store.

   ![Operating Tip]
   
   **Operating Tip**
   
   Press 1. **Cancel** to *not* restart the Global-Store to the **System Resets Menu**.

This completes the procedure to restart your Global-Store to factory defaults.
Squeeze & Tease MD Basic Operation

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information for using the basic features of the Squeeze & Tease MD option. The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

- Operational Overview
- Working in 3D Space
- Using the Positioner
- Using the Mattes Color Knobs
- Squeeze & Tease Menu System
- Squeeze & Tease MD Menu Tree
- 3D Guidelines
- Channel Listing
- Working with Channels
- Channel Management
- Channel Layering and Intersect
- Frontside/Backside Video
- Order of Channel Processing

Note

Refer to the section “Introduction to Keying” on page 7–2 for a complete description of Effects Keyers and Downstream Keyers. The operational descriptions provided in this chapter refer only to the 3D capabilities of Flying Keys.
Operational Overview

Squeeze & Tease MD operates by manipulating Keys in 3 dimensional space. This allows you to position Keys in front of or behind other Keys, and make Keys appear larger or smaller than they are, apply environmental effects to the Keys such as lighting, or apply video manipulation effects such as colorization. To apply any of the Squeeze & Tease MD effects to a Key, you must have the FLY KEY button in the Effects Keyer Group on. This tells the switcher to assign some of the Squeeze & Tease MD resources to the selected Keyer. When Squeeze & Tease MD resources are applied to a Keyer, the selected Key type (Self Key, Auto Select, Chroma Key or PST PATT) is said to be Flying. You can fly any type of Key, provided you have the available Squeeze & Tease channel resources to assign to the Keyer. Refer to the section “3D Guidelines” on page 12–16 for more information on Flying Keys.

When you fly a Key, the video signal for that Key is contained in a channel. By positioning or rotating, or applying other linear, environmental, or color effects to the channel, you are defining how you want the switcher to display the video signal for that flying Key.

Channel Overview

The channel can be positioned anywhere in the virtual 3D world; however, it will only be visible on screen if it is within the Visible Area. This allows you to perform transition effects where the channel appears to fly in from one side. The channel is being taken from a position outside of the Visible Area into the Visible Area.
Working in 3D Space

In order to maximize the features of the Squeeze & Tease MD system, it helps to have a basic understanding of three-dimensional (3D) space. Three axes (X, Y, and Z) are used to define 3D space. The position of a channel on each of the three axes determines its location in 3D space.

- **X** — Refers to the horizontal (left-right) position of the channel on the screen.
- **Y** — Refers to the vertical (up-down) position of the channel on the screen.
- **Z** — Refers to the distance (forwards-backwards) of the channel on the screen.

Channel Location in 3D Space

The center point of the screen is the zero point. Each axis has a positive and negative region.

- Moving a channel to the left of the center (or zero) point locates it in **-X space**.
- Moving a channel to the right of the center point locates it in **+X space**.
- Moving a channel below the center point locates it in **-Y space**.
- Moving a channel above the center point locates it in **+Y space**.
- Moving a channel closer to you locates it in **-Z space**.
- Moving a channel away from you locates it in **+Z space**.

Position Coordinates

The 3D space you work with in this system has upper and lower limits. Position coordinates are used to define a channel location in 3D space and are shown as a unit measurement on the menus. A change in position of **1,000** units is equal to a move of 1 full screen. For example, to move the channel 2 screens to the right, adjust the X-Axis value to **2,000**.

Changing the location of a channel in 3D space does not affect the size or shape of the channel image. However, when a channel is moved forward, it appears larger on the screen. When located at a greater distance in 3D space, it appears smaller.

Position coordinates can be adjusted using the joystick positioner or the knobs on the menu.

- You can move a channel **144,000** full screen widths in either direction on the **X-Axis**.
- You can move a channel **144,000** full screen heights in either direction on the **Y-Axis**.
You can move a channel 400,000 full screen widths in either direction on the Z-Axis.

You may want to think of the 3D working area as a cube with a defined width (X axis), height (Y axis), and depth (Z axis).

You can manipulate a channel in different ways within 3D space to achieve creative results.

When working with channels, keep in mind that 3D space extends beyond the visible area of the screen. Channels can be positioned and manipulated outside of the viewable area to create some interesting effects.

When viewing your work on a monitor, you may want to picture the 3D space as a cube with the visible area and the perspective point positioned within it.

The viewpoint is the point in space that the channel is viewed from.

The visible area is the area within 3D space that can be seen from the viewpoint. The following illustration displays how the visible area extends from the viewpoint.

Note: The Z-Axis works somewhat differently than the other axes because it is the equivalent of 250 screen widths in each direction. Channels can be moved on the Z axis until they become so small they disappear from view.
Channels can be manipulated outside the visible area to create specific effects. For example, a channel can be rotated in such a way that it appears to roll into view from a point outside the screen and roll out of view on the other side.

It is also possible to move a channel to a point behind the viewer. For example, you can manipulate a channel so that it appears to come towards the viewpoint and keeps going until it passes by the viewer. For this effect, the channel will get larger as it moves towards the viewpoint and then disappear.

You can also create a circular motion effect where the channel sweeps across the screen in a large arc that appears to continue behind the viewer.

**Perspective**

Since you are viewing 3D channels on a two-dimensional surface (the screen), it is important to recognize how depth is perceived. This involves understanding relative size, parallax and viewpoint perspective.

**Relative Size**

When working with the Z-Axis, channels that are closer appear larger than channels further away. Zooming the channel changes the distance between the channel and the viewpoint, but does not change the size of the channel. Channels that are closer will also appear over top of channels that are further away.

![Relative Size of Two Channels on the Z-Axis](image)

**Parallax Effect**

If you are manipulating two channels at once, you may notice that the channel closer to you appears to be moving faster than the one that is further away. This effect is known as motion parallax. It occurs because channels that are closer to you move farther across your field of view than channels in the distance.

![Parallax Effect](image)

Although both channels are moving at the same rate, the closer channel will reach the end of the field of view first, giving the impression that it was moving faster.
**Viewpoint and Perspective**

Another effect you may notice when you move a channel left or right on the X-Axis is that it appears to change its angle of rotation. The channel appears to move in a sweeping motion, although its angle of rotation remains unchanged. This is because the viewpoint is not being moved along with the channel. Since the channel is moving but the viewpoint is not, you are seeing the channel from a different angle.

![Diagram showing movement and perspective on the X-Axis](image)

*Movement and Perspective on the X-Axis*

The same effect can be seen when moving a channel up or down on the Y-Axis when using a fixed viewpoint. If the channel is moved higher in 3D space, you see the channel as if you are looking up at it.

![Diagram showing movement and perspective on the Y-Axis](image)

*Movement and Perspective on the Y-Axis*

In **Squeeze & Tease MD**, you can change the viewpoint to create a different perspective. You can also choose to have the viewpoint repositioned along with the channel to eliminate perspective effects.
Channel Rotation

Rotation can occur around the X, Y, or Z-Axes. Rotation values are shown as a spin number on the menus.

The *pivot point* of the rotation (point of rotation) can be set to any point on or off the plane of the channel to produce a variety of creative effects. The default pivot point is the center of the channel.

**Note**

Changing the position of a channel in 3D space does not change the pivot point. The pivot point is relative to the channel. For example, if you adjust the pivot point to the top right-hand corner of the channel, then move the channel, the pivot point will still be at the top right-hand corner of the channel.

A rotation of **1.000** is equal to a **360°** rotation (one complete revolution).

- A rotation value of **0.250** is equal to a **90°** rotation.
- A rotation value of **0.500** is equal to a **180°** rotation.

Rotation can be adjusted from **0.001** to **20.000** in either direction (-20.000 to +20.000), so you can create an effect that involves up to 40 complete rotations. The greater the rotation value (negative or positive), the more times the channel will spin around the pivot point.

**X-Axis Rotation**

The channel rotates horizontally about the Y-Axis. A positive rotation will spin the channel from left to right and a negative rotation will spin it from right to left.

**Y-Axis Rotation**

The channel rotates vertically about the X-Axis. A positive rotation will spin the channel from top to bottom and a negative rotation will spin it from bottom to top.
**Z-Axis Rotation**

The channel rotates about the Z-Axis. A positive rotation will spin the channel clockwise and a negative rotation will spin the channel counter-clockwise.

---

**Channel Centering**

The CNTR (EFF D) button in the Effects Control Group is used to reset the channel to the default values.

- Press the CNTR (EFF D) button once to reset the values on the current menu.
- Double-press the CNTR (EFF D) button to reset all of the channel values.

---

**Control Options**

When manipulating images in the Squeeze & Tease MD system, you have the option of controlling one channel, selecting multiple channels.

**Single Channel**

This control is used when you want to manipulate one image at a time.
Multiple Channels

Select both channels when you want to give the same command to both channels at the same time. Both channels can be selected when using any of the 3D tools such as crop, position, or rotation. If the channels selected have different values, for example, different positions in 3D space, the menu will indicate that the values are different and no position, rotation or cropping coordinates will be displayed. The menu will show the position of both channels in the 3D viewable field.

Note

Keep in mind that adjusting position, rotation or cropping values will adjust each channel based on its current state.

Selecting multiple channels is particularly useful if you want to move or rotate both Keyframes at the same rate. Each Keyframe will rotate around the pivot point you have selected for that channel.

Conclusion

The rest of this chapter deals with the operation of the Squeeze & Tease MD system. Now that you understand the basic concepts of how the system works, the best way to learn how to create specific effects is with some hands-on practice to get a “feel” for the system. Use the positioner to try different channel placements and experiment by changing the pivot point and rotation values. In the end, your knowledge of position and rotation coordinates will help you manipulate your channels creatively and accurately for repeatable results.
Using the Positioner

The 3-Axis Positioner (also known as the joystick) allows you to manipulate channels in 3D space. The movement of the positioner controls the movement of channels or objects in 3D space. Some basic movements and their corresponding directions are illustrated below.

- **X-Axis** — Move the Positioner left or right to control the horizontal position or rotation of the channel.
- **Y-Axis** — Move the Positioner up and down to control the vertical position or rotation of the channel.
- **Z-Axis** — Twist the top portion of the Positioner clockwise and counter-clockwise to control the depth of the channel on the screen. Twisting the positioner clockwise zooms the channel toward you, while twisting it counter-clockwise zooms the channel away from you. When rotating a channel, twist the Positioner clockwise to rotate the channel clockwise, twist it counter-clockwise to rotate the channel counter-clockwise.
Using the Mattes Color Knobs

The **Mattes Color** knobs are used to select and fine tune menu parameters.

**Mattes Color Knobs**

Throughout the rest of this guide, the **Mattes Color** knobs are referred to as follows:

- The **HUE** knob
- The **SAT** knob
- The **LUM** knob

**Note**

Mattes Color knobs are “end-stop” knobs and as such, the electrical position of the knob *may not match* the current physical position of the knob. When this happens a full range of adjustment may be unavailable. Therefore, you must re-synchronize each knob before adjusting a parameter.

Re-synchronize a knob by turning it fully clockwise, then fully counter-clockwise a few times. Full-range adjustments can now be made.
Squeeze & Tease Menu System

This section provides an introduction to the Squeeze & Tease MD Menu system. A more detailed description of these menu functions is located in section “3D Guidelines” on page 12–16.

There are two possible ways to navigate to the Squeeze & Tease MD Main Menu. One way is through pressing associated Hotkeys, and the other way is through the Main Menu.

Through the Main Menu

You can navigate to the S&T MD Menu through the Main Menu if you are Flying a Key.

Use the following procedure to display the S&T MD Menu:

1. Press **MENU** to display the Main Menu.

2. Press **8. S&T MD** to display the S&T MD Menu.

The S&T MD Menu allows you to access all of the Squeeze & Tease functions. Channel listing conventions and instructions for assigning channels are discussed in the section “3D Guidelines” on page 12–16.

Hide Menus

The Hide Menus feature allows you to minimize the amount of information that is displayed on the preview overlay so that it doesn’t obscure the channel you are trying to set up. You can toggle between SHOW and HIDE Mode by pressing the left SEL button, in the Effects Control Group.
Use the following procedure to toggle the Hide Mode:

1. Navigate to the Squeeze & Tease MD Menu that you want to toggle the Hide feature on for. In this example we will use the Position/Crop Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position/Crop</th>
<th>1 2</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Position</td>
<td>5. Crop Horizontal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Rotation</td>
<td>6. Crop Vertical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Press the left SEL button to toggle HIDE Mode to On.

3. Press the left SEL button to toggle SHOW Mode back on.
This completes the procedure for toggling Hide Mode On and Off.
The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for configuring your Squeeze & Tease MD DVE.
3D Guidelines

The *Fly Key* function allows you to apply 3D DVE effects to all of the Key types, with the ability to control the position and rotation of the Key along all three axes in 3D space.

### Note

Ensure that the *Squeeze & Tease MD* option is installed. Refer to Chapter 6 “Software Upgrades and Options” in your *Synergy 100 MD Engineering Manual* for instructions on how to verify the status of your installed hardware and software options.

**Fly Key Rules**

There are a number of important rules that apply to the operation of the *FLY KEY*. These rules apply to both the MLE Keyers and the Downstream Keyers:

- You can *Fly any type of Key*.
- You can *Fly any combination of Keys*.
- You can *Fly a Color Background*.
- You cannot *Fly a Downstream Key (DSK)*.
- You cannot *Fly a MultiDSK Key* (MultiDSK option).
- Different Key Types require a different number of Squeeze & Tease channel resources to operate. The different Key Types and the required number of channels and resources is listed as follows:
  - *Self Keys* require 2 Squeeze & Tease channel resources and are shown as 1 Channel.
  - *Auto Select Keys* require 2 Squeeze & Tease channel resources and are shown as 1 Channel.
  - *Chroma Keys* require 2 Squeeze & Tease channel resources and are shown as 1 Channel.
  - *Preset Pattern Keys* require 1 Squeeze & Tease channel resources and are shown as 1 Channel.
- To use a preset pattern Key without the Fly Key mode, press *FLY KEY* to disable the mode.
- If PST PATT is already on and the Fly Key mode is off, pressing PST PATT again will not automatically enable Fly Key. This feature only works when you change to the Preset Pattern mode.
- If FLY KEY is enabled, changing the Key type to Self Key, Auto Select or Chroma Key automatically turns the Fly Key mode off and switches to the selected Keying mode.
- *Advanced Picture Frame Borders* can only be applied to Preset Pattern Keys.
Using Two Channels in Different Keys

You can manipulate both Squeeze & Tease channels simultaneously even when the channels belong to different keys.

The channels are selected using the SEL/DVE + Ch1+2 hotkey (refer to the section “Using Hotkeys” on page 22–3 for more information). The Effects Control display shows “FLY+” to indicate that both Keys are being manipulated (rather than “FLY1” or “FLY2”, as when only a single key is being controlled).

**FLY+ Mode**

In FLY+ mode, you can change the position, rotation, cropping, and aspect of both channels simultaneously by pressing the ROTATE and/or ASPECT buttons in the lower Effects Control Group. The SOFT and BORDER knobs can also be used to adjust the softness and size of the borders.

| Note | You cannot adjust border color on two keys at once. If you have selected two channels in different keys, you must set the border color for each channel separately. |

**Using the Position/Crop Menu**

In the Position / Crop Menu, when you select both keys, the display above the SEL/DVE button in the Mattes Group shows “1+2” to indicate that both keys are being manipulated.

*Mattes Group Label — Two Keys Selected*

All items in the Position / Crop Menu can be manipulated except for “Backside Video”. This feature can only be used with one key at a time. The selected key is indicated in the menu display.

All other Position / Crop changes are applied to both keys, however the menu on the Preview monitor displays information on a single key only.
Channel Listing

There are specific naming conventions for the Channel Listing on the Squeeze & Tease MD menus. These conventions apply to how the different channels are referred to on the control panel. Beside the menu title is a Channel Listing that displays the status of the channels in the active Keyer.

The Channel Listing is displayed on each Squeeze & Tease menu to indicate how many channels, or objects, are active or assigned, and which Keyer you are currently working in.

Channel status is shown as follows:

- **Active** — Active channels will appear Green. These are the channels that you are manipulating.
- **Assigned** — Assigned channels will appear White. These are the channels that have been assigned to the Key, but are not currently being manipulated.

**Note**
Channel information is shown for the Active Keyer only. If you are in Key 1, only the active or assigned, channels for Key 1 are displayed.
Channels

The Channels section of the Channel Listing shows how many channels are currently assigned to the Key. These channels correspond to the Squeeze & Tease channel resources that the switcher can allocate to the selected Key. Although both Keyers are pulling from the same Squeeze & Tease channel resource pool, the channel listing for each Key are separate. This means that Channel 1 on Key 1 is separate and distinct from Channel 1 on Key 2. For example, if you Fly a Key in Key 1, this will consume the first channel in that Key, and the 1 in the Channel Listing will change color to indicate this. If you then Fly a Key in Key 2, this will consume the first channel in that Key, and the 1 in the Channel Listing will change color to indicate this. A total of 4 Squeeze & Tease channels resources are available across Key 1 and Key 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>A single channel could be consuming 1 or 2 Squeeze &amp; Tease channel resources, depending on the type of Key you are flying.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Active Keyer

The Active Keyer section of the Channel Listing shows which Keyer is currently active. All channel manipulation will be applied to this Key. If both Keyers are selected, the Active Keyer will appear as Key 1+2 on the menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating Tip</th>
<th>You can select both Key 1 and Key 2 at the same time by double-pressing the KEY2 button in the Effects Keyers Group. Both Keys must be Flying.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>You can only Fly a Key in the Effects Keyer. Downstream Keys do not support Flying Keys.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
## Working with Channels

When you Fly a key, a channel is assigned to the keyer. That channel consumes one or two Squeeze & Tease channel resources, depending on the type of key you are flying. As you assign additional channels, more Squeeze & Tease channel resources are consumed until there are none available. You must unassign channels in order to reclaim Squeeze & Tease channel resources. Refer to the section “Channel Status” on page 12-18 for information on verifying the status of your channels.

### Assigning Multiple Channels to a Flying Key

Your Synergy 100 MD switcher allows you to assign a second channel to Key 1 as long as there are sufficient Squeeze & Tease MD resources available.

Use the following procedure to assign and unassign channels to a key:

1. Press **KEY1** in the Transition Control Group. This assigns the next available Channel to Key 1. The channel in use displays. If you are on one of the Squeeze & Tease menus, **Key 1** will be displayed in the Channel Listing section.

2. Select the **PST PATT** button in the Effects Keyer Group.

3. Press **FLY KEY** in the Effects Keyer Group to assign a Channel to the Keyer and display the channel as in use.

4. Select a video source for the Fly Key by pressing a crosspoint button on the Key bus.

5. To assign a second Key to the same Keyer, press and hold **PST PATT** and press **FLY KEY**. This assigns Channel 2 to the Keyer.

6. To free up Squeeze & Tease resources, press and hold **PST PATT** and press **FLY KEY** to unassign the active Channel.

7. Select a different video signal for the Fly Key by pressing a different crosspoint button on the Key bus.

8. Press and hold the middle **SEL** button and press the crosspoint button with **Ch1+2** below it, the **Ch1+2** hotkey, to make both Channel 1 and 2 active.

9. Press and hold the middle **SEL** button and press the **Ch1** or **Ch2** hotkey to make that particular Channel active.

This completes the procedure to assign and unassign channels to a key.

---

**Note**

The Squeeze & Tease MD option must be installed in order to be able to assign it to a Key.

---

**Note**

Self Keys, Auto Select Keys and Chroma Keys require two channel resources from the same channel card to fly. One channel for the fill and another for the alpha.
Channel Management

This section outlines how to select channels, change the order of the channel layers, run an Auto Flip effect, and configure Frontside/Backside effects.

Navigating to the Channel Management Menu

Your Synergy 100 MD switcher allows you to configure the properties of your Squeeze & Tease MD channels via the Channel Management Menu.

Use the following procedure to navigate to the Channel Management Menu:

1. Press **MENU** to display the Main Menu.
2. Press **8. S&T MD** to display the S&T MD Menu.
3. Press **3. Channel Mngmnt** to display the Channel Management Menu.

This completes the procedure to navigate to the Channel Management Menu.

Channel Selection

Once you have created a Key Group, you can work with the two video channels simultaneously or individually.

Selecting a Channel

In the Channel Management Menu, each channel can be toggled on and off within the menu using **1. Channel 1** and **2. Channel 2**. When a Key Group is active, the status is displayed in **green** on the Synergy menu system.

Use the following procedure to activate or deactivate a channel in a Key Group:

1. Press **MENU** to display the Main Menu.
2. Press **8. S&T MD** to display the S&T MD Menu.
3. Press **3. Channel Mngmnt** to display the Channel Management Menu.
4. Activate or deactivate channels as follows:
   - Press **2. Channel 2** to toggle Channel 2 **On** or **Off**.
The channel listing displays the active channels and Keys.

**Note**

The **Current S&T Channel Allocation** field is updated to show the status when a channel is turned on or off. If not enough channels are available for the operation, a warning message is displayed.

This completes the procedure to activate or deactivate a channel in a Key Group.
Channel Layering and Intersect

Channel layering allows you to specify the video priority of multiple channels in the same Keyer. You can select one channel as always on top, always on bottom, or intersecting.

![Note]

You must have both channels selected and in use by the current Keyer in order to apply the layering effect.

Use the following procedure to adjust the layer of images in the same Keyer:

1. Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
2. Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
3. Press **3. Channel Mngmnt** to display the **Channel Management Menu**.
4. Press **3. Layering** to display the **Layering Menu**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Management</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Reserved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Channel 1 On</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Channel 2 On</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Layering Chan1 on Top</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Bkside Vid Off</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Current S&T Channel Allocation: 2/4

Trans 0 Key 1:2 Key 2:0

Use X axis of positioner or Hue knob to scroll list

Channel Management Menu — Layering

5. Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to select one of the following channel layering options:
   - **Auto** — Channel layering is based on the Z position, or depth, in 3D space of each channel. The channel closest to the viewer is on top with no intersection. This is the default setting.
   - **Intersecting** — Both channels intersect.
   - **Chan1 on Top** — Channel 1 is always on top with no intersection.
   - **Chan2 on Top** — Channel 2 is always on top with no intersection.

This completes the procedure to adjust the layer of images in the same Keyer.
Frontside/Backside Video

When you rotate a flying key around to expose the back side of the Key, the video on the backside is a reverse of the video on the front of the Key. You can replace the back side of the Key with a different video source.

Activating Backside Video

Use the following procedure to activate the backside video on a Key:

1. Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
2. Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
3. Press **3. Channel Mngmnt** to display the **Channel Management Menu**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Management</th>
<th>1 Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Reserved</td>
<td>5. Front Black(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Channel 2 Off</td>
<td>7. Auto Flip None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Layering None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Bkside Vid On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This completes the procedure to activate the backside video on a Key.

Selecting Crosspoints for Frontside/Backside Video

Use the following procedure to select crosspoint outputs for the Frontside and Backside Video options in the **Channel Management Menu**:

1. Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
2. Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
3. Press **3. Channel Mngmnt** to display the **Channel Management Menu**.
4. Ensure that the **Backside Video** is activated on the **Channel Management Menu**.
5. Select a crosspoint for the Frontside Video as follows:
   
   - Press **5. Front**.
   - Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to select a crosspoint for the Frontside video.
6. Select a crosspoint for the Backside Video as follows:
   
   - Press **6. Back**.
   - Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to select a crosspoint for the Backside video.

This completes the procedure to select crosspoints for the Frontside and Backside Video.
Auto Flip

If you rotate a Key so that the backside is visible, the video appears backwards. Auto Flip is used to flip the Key horizontally, vertically, or both. When using an image that contains text, this feature ensures that the text appears correctly at all times.

Use the following procedure to select an Auto-Flip option for Frontside/Backside Video:

1. Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
2. Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
3. Press 3. Channel Mngmnt to display the Channel Management Menu.
6. Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to select one of the following options:
   - None — The Frontside video appears backwards when the image is rotated.
   - H Flip — The video is flipped horizontally.
   - V Flip — The video is flipped vertically.
   - H-V Flip — The video is flipped both horizontally and vertically.

This completes the procedure to select an Auto-Flip option for Frontside/Backside Video.

Using Frontside/Backside Video with Sequences

Crosspoints are not stored in the sequence itself; a sequence can be run on a different key, or with different crosspoints.

Use the following procedure to use Frontside/Backside and Auto Flip features in a sequence:

1. Load the sequence. Refer to section “Loading a Sequence” on page 17–20 for instructions on loading sequences.
2. In the Channel Management Menu, activate the Backside video for the desired channels to On.
   - Press 5. Front and select a front crosspoint.
   - Press 7. Auto Flip to select an Auto Flip option.
3. Run the sequence. The sequence will use the selected **Frontside/Backside** and **Auto Flip** settings.

This completes the procedure for using the **Frontside/Backside** and **Auto Flip** features in a sequence.

**Using Frontside/Backside Video with Squeeze & Tease Wipes**

When running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe, any Frontside/Backside and Auto Flip information contained in the wipe itself will not be recognized. In order to run Frontside/Backside and Auto Flip effects with a wipe, the effects will have to be applied to the wipe when it is loaded up.

**Note**

The Frontside/Backside Video feature cannot be used with background Squeeze & Tease Wipes.

Use the following procedure to use **Frontside/Backside** and **Auto Flip** features in a Squeeze & Tease Wipe:

1. Load the Squeeze & Tease Wipe. Refer to section “**Loading a Squeeze & Tease Wipe**” on page 17–31 for instructions on loading a Squeeze & Tease Wipe.

2. In the **Channel Management Menu**, activate the Backside video for the desired channels to **On**.
   - Press 5. **Front** and select a front crosspoint.
   - Press 6. **Back** and select a back crosspoint.
   - Press 7. **Auto Flip** to select an Auto Flip option.

**Operating Tip**

You can make this process easy to repeat in the future by saving these settings in a memory register and then recalling it as needed.

3. Run the Squeeze & Tease Wipe.
   The Squeeze & Tease Wipe will use the selected **Frontside/Backside** and **Auto Flip** settings.

This completes the procedure for using the **Frontside/Backside** and **Auto Flip** features in a Squeeze & Tease Wipe.
Order of Channel Processing

Squeeze & Tease MD uses four levels of processing for each channel. Keyframe effects are processed in the following order:

1. Preprocessor Effects (Defocus, Mosaic, Posterize, Colorize, Strobe)
2. Planar Effects (Positioning, Layering, Borders)
3. Object Positioning (if applicable)
4. WARP Effects
In This Chapter

This chapter provides detailed instructions for using the Squeeze & Tease Position/Crop functions. The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

• Position/Crop Menu
• Channel Position
• Channel Pivot Location
• Channel Rotation
• Channel Aspect Ratio
• Cropping
• Transparency
• Freeze
Position/Crop Menu

The **Positioning** and **Cropping** of a channel is performed from the **Position/Crop Menu**. This menu can be accessed either through the menu system, or by using the **POSN** hotkey. Refer to the section “**Using Hotkeys**” on page 22–3 for more information on using hotkeys.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position/Crop</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Position</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Rotation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Pivot Preset</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Pivot Position</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Aspect Off</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Crop Horizontal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Crop Vertical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Transp. Off</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Freeze Off</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

You must be Flying a Key to display the **Position/Crop Menu** for that Key.

From the **Position/Crop Menu** you can access the following features:

- Channel Position
- Channel Pivot Location
- Channel Aspect Ratio
- Cropping
- Transparency
- Freeze
Channel Position

The **Position Menu** allows you to adjust the position of the channel in the 3D space. You can use the Positioner or the **HUE, SAT** and **LUM** knob to adjust the position of the channel.

### Operating Tip

You can select both **Key 1** and **Key 2** at the same time by double-pressing the **KEY2** button in the **Effects Keyers Group**. Both Keys must be Flying.

Use the following procedure to adjust the position of a channel:

1. Navigate to the **Position/Crop Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.

2. Press **0. Position** to display the **Position Menu**.

### Operating Tip

You can use the **POSN** hotkey to display the **Position/Crop Menu** directly.

- Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
- Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
- Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.

Use the **knobs** in the **Mattes Group** as follows to adjust the position of the channel:

- **X-Axis** — Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the horizontal position. (Positive values move the channel to the right.)
- **Y-Axis** — Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the vertical position. (Positive values move the channel up.)
- **Z-Axis** — Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the distance the channel is from the center point. (Positive values move the channel away from you.)

Use the **Positioner** as follows to adjust the position of the channel:

### Operating Tip

Using the positioner allows you to move the channel into position more quickly than using the knobs.

- **X-Axis** — Move the **Positioner left or right** to control the horizontal position of the channel on screen.
- **Y-Axis** — Move the **Positioner up or down** to control the vertical position of the channel on screen.
- **Z-Axis** — Twist the **Positioner** knob *clockwise* and *counter-clockwise* to change the distance of the channel from the zero point (for example, move it closer or further away from you).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating Tip</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You can <em>not</em> change the <em>size</em> of the channel. You can only change the distance of the channel from the zero point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This completes the procedure for adjusting the position of the key on the screen. Refer to the section “**Using the Positioner**” on page 12–10 for more information on the 3-axis positioner.
Channel Pivot Location

The **Point of Rotation** is the point in 3D space where the Key is rotated around. Before adjusting the rotation of the channel, ensure your **Point of Rotation** or **Pivot Point** is set. You can set the Pivot Point using a **Pivot Preset** or by selecting a location manually.

**Pivot Preset**

Choose the **Pivot Preset** option to select a preset pivot point for a channel (applies to channels only, does not apply to objects).

Use the following procedure to set the point of rotation using a preset point:

1. Navigate to the **Position/Crop Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.
2. Press **2. Pivot Preset** to display the **Pivot Preset Menu**.
3. Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left** and **right**, to select the Pivot Preset you want to use.

This completes the procedure for setting the point of rotation using a preset point.

**Operating Tip**

You can use the **POSN** hotkey to display the **Position/Crop Menu** directly.
Pivot Position

Choose the **Pivot Position** option to move the pivot point to a different location in 3D space.

Use the following procedure to manually set the Pivot Point:

1. Navigate to the **Position/Crop Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.
2. Press **3. Pivot Position** to display the **Pivot Position Menu**.

3. Select a specific **Pivot Point** as follows:
   - **X-Axis** — Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left** and **right**, to move the pivot position along the **X-Axis**.
   - **Y-Axis** — Use the **SAT** knob, or move the **Positioner up** and **down**, to move the pivot position along the **Y-Axis**.
   - **Z-Axis** — Use the **LUM** knob, or twist the **Positioner knob clockwise** and **counter-clockwise**, to move the pivot position along **Z-Axis**.

This completes the procedure for manually setting the Pivot Point.
Channel Rotation

Once the Pivot Point has been selected, you can adjust the rotation of the channel.

Use the following procedure to adjust the rotation of the channel around the Pivot Point:

1. Navigate to the Position/Crop Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 0. Position/Crop to display the Position/Crop Menu.
2. Press 1. Rotation to display the Rotation Menu.
   - Use the POSN hotkey to display the Position/Crop Menu directly.
3. Adjust the rotation of the channel as follows:
   - **X-Axis** — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to rotate the channel horizontally around the X-Axis.
   - **Y-Axis** — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to rotate the channel vertically around the Y-Axis.
   - **Z-Axis** — Use the LUM knob, or twist the Positioner knob clockwise and counter-clockwise, to rotate the channel around the Z-Axis.

This completes the procedure for adjusting the rotation of the channel around the Pivot Point.
Channel Aspect Ratio

The Aspect feature enables you to squeeze or stretch a channel image horizontally and/or vertically.

**Note**

This feature can be used on channels only, if you are working with an object, the Aspect option will be unavailable.

Use the following procedure to adjust the aspect values of a channel image:

1. Navigate to the Position/Crop Menu as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press **MENU** to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 0. Position/Crop to display the Position/Crop Menu.

2. Press 4. Aspect to display the Aspect Menu.

3. Adjust the size of the channel image as follows:

   **Note**
   
   If the effect is not On (not yet in use), you must press 4. Aspect again, to toggle to effect On.

   - **X-Aspect** — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to squeeze or stretch the channel image horizontally.
   - **Y-Aspect** — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to squeeze or stretch the channel image vertically.
   - **Size** — Use the LUM knob, or twist the Positioner knob clockwise and counter-clockwise, to squeeze or stretch the channel image in both directions at the same time.

   **Operating Tip**
   
   The Size function is independent of the X-Aspect and Y-Aspect. For example, if you set the X-Aspect to 2.000, the Y-Aspect to 1.000 and the Size to 2.000, the width of the channel image (X-Aspect) will be quadrupled and the height (Y-Aspect) will be doubled.

This completes the procedure for adjusting the aspect values of an channel image.
Cropping

Cropping a channel image allows you to bring the sides of a channel image in, reducing the viewable area, but not changing the size of the channel image.

Crop Horizontal

Horizontal cropping allows you to adjust the left and right sides of the channel image.

Use the following procedure to crop the horizontal edges of the channel image:

1. Navigate to the Position/Crop Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 0. Position/Crop to display the Position/Crop Menu.
2. Press 5. Crop Horizontal to display the Crop Horizontal Menu.

   Operating Tip
   You can use the POSN hotkey to display the Position/Crop Menu directly.

3. Adjust the left and right edges of the channel image as follows:
   - **Left** — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to adjust the cropping on the left edge of the channel image. As the knob is turned, the left edge moves toward the right and crops the left edge of the channel image.
   - **Right** — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to adjust the cropping on the right edge of the channel image. As the middle knob is turned, the right edge moves left and crops the right side of the channel image.

This completes the procedure for cropping the horizontal sides of the channel image.
Crop Vertical

Vertical cropping allows you to adjust the top and bottom edges of the channel image.

Use the following procedure to crop the vertical edges of the channel image:

1. Navigate to the **Position/Crop Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.

2. Press **6. Crop Vertical** to display the **Crop Vertical Menu**.

3. Adjust the top and bottom edges of the channel image as follows:
   - **Top** — Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to adjust the cropping on the top edge of the channel image.
   - **Bottom** — Use the **SAT** knob, or move the **Positioner up and down**, to adjust the cropping on the lower edge of the channel image.

This completes the procedure for cropping the vertical edges of the channel image.
The **Transparency** effect allows you to adjust the transparency of the channel image. You can make the channel image completely opaque (0% Transparency) or completely transparent (100% Transparency).

**Note**
The Transparency feature is currently only available on Preset Pattern Keys.

Use the following procedure to adjust the transparency of a channel image:

1. Navigate to the **Position/Crop Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.
2. Press **7. Transp.** to display the **Transparency Menu**.

   ![Transparency Menu](image)

   **Position/Crop — Transparency Menu**

   - Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify
   - Transparency: 0.0%

   Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

**Operating Tip**
You can use the **POSN** hotkey to display the **Position/Crop Menu** directly.

- Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
- Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
- Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.
3. Press **7. Transp.** again, to toggle to effect **On**.

   ![Transparency Menu](image)

   **Position/Crop — Transparency Menu**

   - Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify
   - Transparency: 0.0%

**Note**
If the effect is not **On** (not yet in use), you must press **7. Transp.** again, to toggle to effect **On**.

3. Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left** and **right**, to adjust the level of transparency as follows:
   - **Fully Visible** — At **0.0%** transparency the channel image will appear as normal.
   - **Semi Transparent** — As the transparency is adjusted from **0%** to **100%** the channel image will become more transparent.
   - **Invisible** — At **100%** transparency the channel image will not be visible on screen.

This completes the procedure for adjusting the transparency of a channel image.
Freeze

The **Freeze** effect will pause the video of the current channel, creating a temporary still. While the video is frozen, you still have complete control over the channel, including position and rotation.

---

**Note**

Freeze currently cannot be applied to multiple channels at once. If you need to freeze more than one channel, you will have to select each channel and freeze it individually.

---

Use the following procedure to freeze a channel image:

1. Navigate to the **Position/Crop Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.
2. Press **8. Freeze** to display the **Freeze Menu**.

---

**Operational Tip**

You can use the **POSN** hotkey to display the **Position/Crop Menu** directly.

- Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
- Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
- Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.

---

This completes the procedure for freezing a channel image.

---

**Note**

If the effect is not **On** (not yet in use), you must press **8. Freeze** again, to toggle to effect **On**.

---

**Operational Tip**

When you move a channel from one Key to another, the channel will no longer be frozen. For example, if a channel is on Key 2 and you unfly it and then reallocate it to Key 1, the channel image will no longer be frozen.
Advanced Positioning

In This Chapter

This chapter provides detailed instructions for using the Squeeze & Tease Advanced Positioning functions.

The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

• Advanced Positioning Menu
• Spin
• Viewpoint
• Locate
The **Advanced Positioning** of a channel is performed from the **Adv. Positioning Menu**. This menu can be accessed either through the menu system, or by using the **POSN** hotkey. Refer to the section “Using Hotkeys” on page 22–3 for more information on using hotkeys.

**Note**

If you use the **POSN** hotkey to navigate to the **Position/Crop Menu**, you will have to press **9. Adv. Positioning** to display the **Adv. Positioning Menu**.

From the **Adv. Positioning Menu** you can access the following features:

- Spin
- Viewpoint
- Locate

**Note**

You must be Flying a Key to display the **Adv. Positioning Menu** for that Key.
Spin

The Spin feature allows you to rotate a channel in 3D relative to the fixed reference frame of the screen (as opposed to a pivot point on the channel itself).

Use the following procedure to spin a channel:

1. Navigate to the Adv. Positioning Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 0. Position/Crop to display the Position/Crop Menu.

2. Press 0. Spin to display the Spin Menu.

3. Rotate the channel as follows:
   - **X-Spin** — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to spin the channel around the X-Axis of the screen.
   - **Y-Spin** — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to spin the channel around the Y-Axis of the screen.
   - **Z-Spin** — Use the LUM knob, or twist the Positioner knob clockwise and counter-clockwise, to spin the channel around the Z-Axis of the screen.

This completes the procedure for spinning a channel.
Viewpoint

The Viewpoint feature allows you to change the perspective, or point-of-view, of the channel on the screen. This feature can be used to create an effect where the channel appears to have a different vanishing point on the screen. Refer to the section “Viewpoint and Perspective” on page 12–6 for more information on viewpoint.

Use the following procedure to change the perspective of a channel:

1. Navigate to the Adv. Positioning Menu as follows:
   • Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   • Press 0. Position/Crop to display the Position/Crop Menu.

2. Press 1. Viewpoint to display the Viewpoint Menu.

3. Adjust the viewpoint as follows:
   • X-Location — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to move the viewpoint left or right along the X-Axis.
   • Y-Location — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to move the viewpoint up or down along the Y-Axis.

Note: Viewpoint cannot be used with objects. You must set the viewpoint for each channel before you create the object.

This completes the procedure for changing the perspective of a channel.
Locate

The **Locate** feature allows you to move the channel and the viewpoint together, at the same time. This feature is used when you want to move the channel without changing its appearance or shape. With Locate enabled, the apparent angle of the channel is always the same, so there is no change in perspective when the channel is moved in 3D space.

Use the following procedure to move the channel and viewpoint together:

1. Navigate to the **Adv. Positioning Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.
   - Press **9. Advanced Positioning** to display the **Adv. Positioning Menu**.

2. Press **2. Locate** to display the **Locate Menu**.

3. Move the channel and viewpoint together as follows:
   - **X-Locate** — Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to move the channel and viewpoint left or right along the **X-Axis**.
   - **Y-Locate** — Use the **SAT** knob, or move the **Positioner up and down**, to move the channel and viewpoint up or down along the **Y-Axis**.

This completes the procedure for moving a channel and viewpoint together.
Borders

In This Chapter

This chapter provides instructions for applying Advanced Picture Frame Borders to Squeeze & Tease MD Flying Keys.

The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

- Picture Frame Borders Menu
- Border Size
- Border Appearance
- Border Texture and Corners
- Border Color
- Working with Multiple Channels
Picture Frame Borders Menu

Advanced Picture Frame Border are applied and adjusted from the Border Menu. This menu can be accessed either through the menu system, or by using the BORDER hotkey. Refer to the section “Using Hotkeys” on page 22–3 for more information on using hotkeys.

**Note** Advanced Picture Frame Borders can only be applied to Flying Preset Pattern Keys.

From the Border Menu you can access the following features:

- Border Size
- Border Appearance
- Border Texture and Corners
- Border Color

**Note** You must be Flying a Key to display the Border Menu for that Key.
Border Size

The **Size** feature allows you to adjust the size of the border.

Use the following procedure to adjust the size of a border:

1. Navigate to the **Border Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press 8. **S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press 1. **Border** to display the **Border Menu**.

2. Press 0. **Size** to display the **Size Menu**.

3. Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to adjust the size of the border around the channel.

As you adjust the size of the border, it expands equally inwards from the edge of the channel. The graphic below shows the border in relation to the channel. The border is represented by a solid line and the outside edge of the channel is represented by the dashed line.

![Border Size Graphic](image)

This completes the procedure for adjusting the size of a border.
Border Appearance

The overall appearance of the border can be adjusted to give different effects. You can adjust the following properties of the channel border.

- Border Softness
- Border Symmetry
- Border Transparency

Border Softness

Border softness values are used to create a soft-edge effect on the inside of the border.

Operating Tip

It is best to set the border size first, then adjust the softness. If the amount of softness exceeds the border size, the system increases the apparent size of the border.

To create the widest possible border, adjust **Size** to the maximum setting and adjust **Softness** to the minimum setting.

Use the following procedure to adjust the softness of the border:

1. Navigate to the **Border Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press **MENU** to display the Main Menu.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press **1. Border** to display the Border Menu.
2. Press **0. Size** to display the Size Menu.

![Size Menu](image)
3. Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to adjust the softness of the border. Softness is applied to the inner and outer edges of the channel, as well as the border.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>If no border has been applied to the channel, the Softness effect will be applied to the edges of the channel.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Minimum Softness — at 0.0% the edges of the border are square.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Maximum Softness — at 100.0% the edges of the border come together to form a point in the center.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This completes the procedure for adjusting the softness of the border.

**Border Symmetry**

Symmetry is used to alter the center position of the channel border. As you adjust the symmetry, the relative center of the border expands outwards from the true center of the border. The default symmetry of 50% sets the relative center to the true center of the border.

Use the following procedure to adjust the symmetry of the border:

1. Navigate to the Border Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
2. Press 0. Size to display the Size Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating Tip</th>
<th>You can use the BORDER hotkey to display the Border Menu directly.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Press MENU to display the Main Menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Press 8. S&amp;T MD to display the S&amp;T MD Menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Press 1. Border to display the Border Menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This completes the procedure for adjusting the softness of the border.

Border Symmetry

Symmetry is used to alter the center position of the channel border. As you adjust the symmetry, the relative center of the border expands outwards from the true center of the border. The default symmetry of 50% sets the relative center to the true center of the border.

Use the following procedure to adjust the symmetry of the border:

1. Navigate to the Border Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
2. Press 0. Size to display the Size Menu.
3. Use the LUM knob, or twist the Positioner knob clockwise and counter-clockwise, to adjust the softness symmetry of the border as follows:

- **0.0%** — This will give you a hard inner edge. Adjustments to softness or transparency will be applied almost entirely to the interior edge of the border.
- **100.0%** — This will give you a hard outer edge. Adjustments to softness or transparency will be applied almost entirely to the exterior edges of the border.

**Note**

Softness symmetry is not available with horizontal or vertical corners, or when a border size of 0.0% is selected.

This completes the procedure for adjusting the symmetry of the border.

**Border Transparency**

There are two kinds of transparency that can be applied to the Flying Key border. Edge Transparency allows you to adjust the level of transparency of the outer and inner edges of the border. Interior Transparency allows you to adjust the level of transparency of the center of the border.

Use the following procedure to adjust the transparency of the border:

1. Navigate to the **Border Menu** as follows:

   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.

**Operating Tip**

You can use the BORDER hotkey to display the Border Menu directly.

   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 1. Border to display the Border Menu.

2. Press **4. Advanced** to display the Advanced Menu.
3. Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to adjust the transparency of the outer and inner edges of the Flying Key border.

4. Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to adjust the transparency of the relative center of the Flying Key border.

This completes the procedure for adjusting the symmetry of the border.

Operating Tip

If you adjust the Interior Transparency to the same level as the Edge Transparency, you will end up with an evenly transparent border.
Border Texture and Corners

A number of textures and corners (styles) can be applied to border to give them a unique appearance. Textures allow you to select the style, color and pattern of the border. Corners allows you to select how the corners of the border appear.

Border Texture Styles

Use the following procedure to apply border textures:

1. Navigate to the Border Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 1. Border to display the Border Menu.
2. Press 1. Style to display the Texture Style Menu.

   Operating Tip: You can use the BORDER hotkey to display the Border Menu directly.

3. Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to select the texture you want to apply to the border.

This completes the procedure for applying a texture to a border.

Border Corners

Use the following procedure to apply corner styles:

1. Navigate to the Border Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.

   Operating Tip: You can use the BORDER hotkey to display the Border Menu directly.

2. Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
3. Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
• Press **1. Border** to display the **Border Menu**.

2. Press **2. Corners** to display the **Corners Menu**.

3. Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left** and **right**, to select the type of corner you want to apply to the border.

This completes the procedure for applying corner styles.
Border Color

The Color feature allows you to change the colors used in the border. This feature can be applied to either the active border or all the borders, depending on whether the Auto Defaults has been set to On or Off.

Note

When you save a switcher setting, the Auto Default setting you have chosen for borders will not be saved as part of that setting.

Adjusting the Border Color

Use the following procedure to adjust the border colors:

Note

If you want to preserve your color changes, you will have set Auto Defaults to Off before you change the colors. If you do not, the colors will switch back to the default values if you change the Border Texture.

1. Navigate to the Border Menu as follows:
   • Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   • Press 1. Border to display the Border Menu.

Operating Tip

You can use the BORDER hotkey to display the Border Menu directly.


   3. Press Edit Color1, Edit Color2, or Edit Color3 to display the color information for that color.

   4. Adjust the selected color as follows:

      • Hue — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to adjust the color of the border. A full 360 degrees of hue adjustment is provided.
- **Saturation** — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to adjust the color saturation of the border. Saturation can be adjusted from 0.0% (monochrome, or no saturation) to 100.0% percent – full color saturation.
- **Luminance** — Use the LUM knob, or twist the Positioner knob clockwise and counter-clockwise, to adjust the luminance of the border. The luminance can be adjusted from 0.0% (minimum brightness) to 100.0% (maximum brightness).

5. Press **3. Default Colors** to return all the color values to the default settings.

---

**Note**
The Default Colors feature will remove any color adjustments you have made and return the color selections for the borders to the default setting.

This completes the procedure for adjusting the border colors.
Working with Multiple Channels

The following table shows how the Border effects behave when working with both channels selected.

### Operating Tip

When working with objects, the border must be applied to each channel separately.

When working with two channels, a quick way to give any border parameter equal values is to adjust the value to 100.0% with both channels selected. Then you can adjust the parameter to the desired value for both channels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Border Parameter</th>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Size and Softness</strong></td>
<td>All border values are the same for both channels.</td>
<td>The values are displayed. The joystick or knobs can be used to create the same sized border with the same softness values for both channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Channel 1 and Channel 2 border values are different.</strong></td>
<td>A message is displayed to indicate the values are different. The values for Channel 1 are displayed. The joystick or knobs can be used to increase or decrease the border size or softness by an equal percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Softness</strong></td>
<td>All border values are the same for both channels.</td>
<td>The knob values are displayed. The knobs can be used to adjust the border softness for both channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Channel 1 and Channel 2 border values are different.</strong></td>
<td>A message is displayed to indicate the values are different. The values for Channel 1 are displayed. The knobs can be used to increase or decrease the border softness by an equal percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Color</strong></td>
<td>All border values are the same for both channels</td>
<td>The knob values are displayed. The knobs can be used to adjust the border color for both channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Channel 1 and Channel 2 border values are different.</strong></td>
<td>A message is displayed to indicate the values are different. The values for Channel 1 are displayed. The knobs can be used to increase or decrease border color values by an equal percentage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preprocessor Effects

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information for applying additional effects to channels in Squeeze & Tease MD. You can apply any combination of Preprocessor Effects to achieve the look you want.

Preprocessor Effects allow you to perform a number of static effects on a channel. These effects are applied directly to the channel and are not associated with another Squeeze & Tease effects, such as a wipe.

The following topic is discussed in this chapter:

- Preprocessor Effects Menu
- Defocus Effect
- Mosaic Effect
- Posterize Effect
- Colorize Effect
- Strobe Effect
The **Preprocessor Effects** are performed from the **Preprocessor Menu**. This menu can be accessed either through the menu system, or by using the **PREPROC** hotkey. Refer to the section "**Using Hotkeys**" on page 22–3 for more information on using hotkeys.

![Preprocessor Menu](image)

**Note**

You must be Flying a Key to display the **Preprocessor Menu** for that Key.

From the **Preprocessor Menu** you can access the following features:

- Defocus Effect
- Mosaic Effect
- Posterize Effect
- Colorize Effect
- Strobe Effect
Defocus Effect

The **Defocus Effect** allows you to blur the channel image vertically and horizontally. The level of horizontal, vertical, and overall defocus is indicated.

Use the following procedure to apply the Defocus Effect to a channel image:

1. Navigate to the **Preprocessor Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **3. Preprocessor** to display the **Preprocessor Menu**.

2. Press **0. Defocus** to display the **Defocus Menu**.

3. Adjust the level of defocus as follows:
   - **Horizontal** — Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to adjust the amount of **horizontal** defocus.
   - **Vertical** — Use the **SAT** knob, or move the **Positioner up and down**, to adjust the amount of **vertical** defocus.
   - **Overall** — Use the **LUM** knob, or twist the **Positioner knob clockwise and counter-clockwise**, to adjust both values by an equal percentage.

This completes the procedure for applying the Defocus Effect to a channel image.
Mosaic Effect

The Mosaic Effect allows you to transform the channel image into an arrangement of tiles. The size of the horizontal and vertical tiles is indicated.

Use the following procedure to apply the Mosaic Effect to a channel image:

1. Navigate to the Preprocessor Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 3. Preprocessor to display the Preprocessor Menu.
2. Press 1. Mosaic to display the Mosaic Menu.

   Preprocessor — Mosaic Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preprocessor</th>
<th>1 2 U O1 O2 Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Defocus</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Mosaic</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Posterize</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Colorize</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Strobe</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Mosaic  Horiz. Tiles: 0.0%
   Vert. Tiles: 0.0%
   Overall

   Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

   Preprocessor — Mosaic Menu

   Operating Tip

   You can use the PREPROC hotkey to display the Preprocessor Menu directly.

   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 3. Preprocessor to display the Preprocessor Menu.

   Note

   If the effect is not On (not yet in use), you must press 1. Mosaic again, to toggle to effect On.

3. Adjust the size of the tiles as follows:

   - **Horizontal Tiles** — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to adjust the size of the horizontal tiles in pixels.
   - **Vertical Tiles** — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to adjust the size of the vertical tiles in pixels.
   - **Overall** — Use the LUM knob, or twist the Positioner knob clockwise and counter-clockwise, to adjust both values adjust both values equally.

   This completes the procedure for applying the Mosaic Effect to a channel image.
Posterize Effect

The Posterize Effect allows you to adjust the areas of luminance and chrominance of the channel image. The levels of luminance and chrominance adjustment are indicated.

Use the following procedure to apply the Posterize Effect to a channel image:

1. Navigate to the Preprocessor Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 3. Preprocessor to display the Preprocessor Menu.
2. Press 2. Posterize to display the Posterize Menu.
3. Adjust the posterize effect on the channel image as follows:
   - Luma — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to decrease the level of luminance.
   - Chroma — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to decrease the level of chrominance.
   - Overall — Use the LUM knob, or twist the Positioner knob clockwise and counter-clockwise, to adjust the level of both luminance and chrominance equally.

This completes the procedure for applying the Posterize Effect to a channel image.

Operating Tip

You can use the PREPROC hotkey to display the Preprocessor Menu directly.

Note

If the effect is not On (not yet in use), you must press 2. Posterize again, to toggle to effect On.
Colorize Effect

The Colorize Effect allows you to replace the color component of the channel image with a color of your choice. The levels of hue and saturation are indicated. The default color is gray.

Use the following procedure to apply the Colorize Effect to a channel image:

1. Navigate to the Preprocessor Menu as follows:
   • Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   • Press 3. Preprocessor to display the Preprocessor Menu.

2. Press 3. Colorize to display the Colorize Menu.

   ![Preprocessor Menu]

   Preprocessor — Colorize Menu

   Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

   Preprocessor — Colorize Menu

   Colorize: On
   Hue: 0.0%
   Saturation: 0.0%

3. Apply a color effect as follows:
   • **Hue** — Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to adjust the color.
   • **Saturation** — Use the SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to adjust the saturation of the color.
     ~ **Monochrome or no saturation** — set the value to 0%.
     ~ **Full color saturation** — set the value to 100%.

This completes the procedure for applying the Colorize Effect to a channel image.
# Strobe Effect

The **Strobe Effect** allows you to alternate between freezing and running live video.

Use the following procedure to apply the **Strobe Effect**:

1. Navigate to the **Preprocessor Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **8. S&T MD** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **3. Preprocessor** to display the **Preprocessor Menu**.

2. Press **4. Strobe** to display the **Strobe Menu**.

3. Use the **LUM** knob, or twist the **Positioner** knob **clockwise** and **counter-clockwise**, to select the mode you want the strobe effect to operate in as follows:
   - **Frame** — Select this option to have the entire Frame, both Fields for interlaced video, of the channel image frozen.
   - **Field** — Select this option to have a Field of the channel image frozen.

4. Adjust the duration of the strobe effect as follows:
   - **Live Frames (Live Fields)** — Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left** and **right**, to adjust the number of live Frames or Fields that will be displayed between the frozen channel images.
   - **Frozen Frames (Frozen Fields)** — Use the **SAT** knob, or move the **Positioner up** and **down**, to adjust the length of time, in Frames or Fields, that the channel image will be frozen for.

This completes the procedure for applying the Strobe Effect to a channel image.
Squeeze & Tease MD Sequences and Wipes

In This Chapter

This chapter provides detailed instructions for using the Squeeze & Tease MD Sequences and Wipes. The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

- Introduction to Sequences
- Using the Sequence Menus
- Creating a Sequence
- Modifying the Keyframes of a Sequence
- Working with Sequences
- Running a Sequence
- Introduction to Squeeze & Tease Wipes
- Creating a Squeeze & Tease Wipe
- Running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe
- Storing Sequences and Wipes
- Recalling Sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes

Note

Refer to the section “Squeeze & Tease MD Wipes and Sequences” on page 21–2 for a description of each wipe and sequence supplied.
Introduction to Sequences

Sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes are two powerful groups of Squeeze & Tease effects. These effects allow you to create a combination of Key effects with wipes. When learning about these features, try using different combinations of Squeeze & Tease effects to produce original and creative sequences and wipes.

A Sequence is a series of effects (both single and multi-channel) that can be created, saved, and run directly from your switcher. You can use any of the 3D functions to manipulate the images in a sequence. For example, a sequence might consist of an image that rotates across the screen, moves to a specific location in 3D space and acquires a border.

Understanding Sequences

Sequences are created to run a series of image effects, using any combination of parameters such as position, cropping, rotation or borders. To make a sequence, you create a series of Keyframes that define the state and location of the image in 3D space. The system interpolates, or fills in, the images between the Keyframes to produce a fluid motion effect.

**Note**

A sequence can only be run on a flying Key.

The following example demonstrates a simple sequence with four Keyframes:

1. The image starts in the bottom left corner.
2. The image moves to the position shown in Keyframe 1.
3. The image rotates and moves to the position in Keyframe 2.
4. The image moves to the position shown in Keyframe 3.
5. The image acquires a border and moves to the position shown in Keyframe 4.
Keyframe Transitions

You can set the type of motion for each Keyframe to show how the image should move, or transition, to the next Keyframe:

- **Smooth motion** — The image accelerates slowly at the start and decelerates slowly at the end of the sequence. The motion between the Keyframes is a straight line.

- **Spline motion** — The image accelerates slowly at the start and decelerates slowly at the end of the sequence. The motion between the Keyframes is a user modifiable spline-curve that smoothly moves the image through each keyframe. Refer to the section “Modifying Spline Motion” on page 17–10 for information on changing spline motion parameters.

- **Linear motion** — The sequence moves from Keyframe to Keyframe at a constant velocity. This produces a step-motion effect.

You can also specify how quickly you want the sequence to move from Keyframe to Keyframe.
Using the Sequence Menus

The Synergy 100 MD Sequence Menus includes options to create and load sequences, modify the parameters of sequences, and save sequences for future use.

Navigating to the Sequence Menus

Use the following procedure to navigate to the Sequence Menu:

1. Press **MENU** to display the Main Menu.
2. Press **8. S&T MD** to display the S&T MD Menu.
3. Press **2. Sequence** to display the Sequence Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Load/Save Sequence</td>
<td>5. Delete Keyframe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Previous Keyframe</td>
<td>6. Delete Workspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Next Keyframe</td>
<td>7. Wipe Modifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Insert Keyframe</td>
<td>8. Modify Keyframes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Overview of the Sequence Menus

When the Sequence Menu is initially accessed, the only actions available are to load a sequence from memory or to insert a keyframe.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Load/Save Sequence</td>
<td>5. Delete Keyframe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Previous Keyframe</td>
<td>6. Delete Workspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Next Keyframe</td>
<td>7. Wipe Modifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Insert Keyframe</td>
<td>8. Modify Keyframes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Sequence Menu provides the following information about a sequence:

- **Selected Keyframe** — This field indicates the current selected Keyframe in the sequence.
- **Wipe Modifier** — This field indicates how the sequence ends if it is being used as a transition.

Remember, the sequence rate determines how fast the sequence will play on the switcher when run via the **AUTO TRANS** button. When you create the sequence, you establish
its duration. This is the default sequence rate. If you want the sequence to run at a
different rate, you can set a new rate manually. Refer to the section “Running a
Sequence” on page 17–23 for detailed instructions.

- **Sequence Name** — This field indicates the sequence name. When creating a new
sequence, “New Sequence” is set as a default title. Once a sequence has been saved, any
changes to the sequence will be indicated by the word “Modified” appearing next to the
sequence name. It disappears the next time you save the sequence.

- **Number of Keyframes** — This field indicates the number of Keyframes in the
sequence.

- **Duration** — This field (shown in minutes, seconds, and frames), indicates the
programmed duration of the sequence for the selected Key. The Duration only applies to
the sequence.
Creating a Sequence

Sequences are created to move and modify an image in a series of predetermined effects. To create sequences, you work primarily with the various Squeeze & Tease menus. Refer to the section “Using the Sequence Menus” on page 17–4 for information on accessing the various Squeeze & Tease menus.

The following procedure explains how to create a simple, four Keyframe, sequence as shown below, using the hotkey system. If you prefer, you can use the Sequence Menus to create your sequences.

Try experimenting with different effects and Keyframe durations to get a feel for the creative possibilities of the system.

Creating a Four Keyframe Sequence

Use the following procedure to create a simple, four Keyframe sequence:

1. Navigate to the S&T MD Position/Crop Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 0. Position/Crop to display the S&T MD Position/Crop Menu.
2. In the S&T MD Position/Crop Menu, prepare the first Keyframe in the sequence. For example, the following illustration displays an image that has been positioned and rotated in 3D space. Refer to the section “Position/Crop Menu” on page 13–2 for details.
3. Press SEL/DVE and Seq to display the Sequence Menu.

4. If the timeline is not already empty, delete the existing workspace by pressing 6. Delete Workspace.

5. Press 3. Insert Keyframe to insert the first keyframe.

   By default, the first Keyframe has a duration of 0 frames. We will now create a slew to the first Keyframe. This duration will be the time it takes to slew from the initial position to the first keyframe when running the sequence forwards. It will also serve as the time it takes to slew from the first keyframe back to the initial position when running the sequence in reverse.

6. Create a slew to the first Keyframe as follows:
   - Press 9. Keyframe Parameters to display the Keyframe Parameters Menu.
   - Press 0. Duration to display the Sequence Duration Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyframe Parameters</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Duration</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Hold</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Spline Params</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Type: Smooth
   Frames: 0
   Rotate: Normal

   Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

   - Use the SAT knob to adjust the duration, in frames, to 30.
   - Press BACK to return to the Sequence Menu.
   - Press 4. Overwrite Keyframe to save your changes to the duration.

Operating Tip

You can adjust the Tension, Bias, and Continuity of a spline path using the procedures in section “Adjusting Tension, Bias, and Continuity” on page 17–12.
We will now program another Keyframe to continue the sequence. The image will be rotated from Keyframe 1 to the new Keyframe 2.

7. Program the new Keyframe 2 as follows:
   - Press SEL/DVE and POSN to return to the Position Menu.
   - Use the knobs or the Positioner to move and rotate the image to the desired position.

8. Program the new Keyframe 3 as follows:
   - Press SEL/DVE and POSN to return to the Position Menu.
   - Use the knobs or the Positioner to move the image to the desired position.
9. Program the new Keyframe 4 as follows:
   • Press SEL/DVE and POSN to return to the Position Menu.
   • Use the knobs or the Positioner to move the image to the desired position.

10. If desired, apply a border to the image.

11. Insert Keyframe 4 as follows:
   • Press SEL/DVE and Seq to display the Sequence Menu.
   • Press 3. Insert Keyframe to insert Keyframe 4.

12. Save your sequence as follows:
   • Press SEL/DVE and LOAD SEQ to display the Load/Save Seq. Menu.

   ![Load/Save Seq. Menu]

   - Use the knobs to select a sequence position in the list.
   - Press 1. Save Sequence to save the sequence in that position.

   For ease of use, you should give each sequence a unique, descriptive name. Refer to the section “Renaming a Sequence” on page 17–21 for information on renaming a sequence.

   This completes the procedure to create a simple, four Keyframe sequence.
Modifying Spline Motion

Spline motion differs from Smooth and Linear motion in that the image does not follow a straight line between keyframes. Rather, the image follows a curving (spline) path that smoothly takes it from keyframe to keyframe.

This section includes an overview of the spline path, the three parameters of spline motion, and how to adjust these parameters.

Spline Motion Overview

The figure below shows three keyframes and two sample paths that an image would take as it moved between them: a spline path and a linear, or smooth, path.

Notice that the spline path between keyframes is smooth and continuous with no abrupt direction changes. The linear and smooth path is a series of straight lines between keyframes resulting in abrupt directional changes at the keyframes. Getting fluid motion between keyframes requires using spline motion.

The initial spline path between keyframes is determined by the switcher based on where you place your keyframes. You can control this path to a certain extent by modifying three parameters: Tension, Bias, and Continuity.

Tension

Tension affects how tight or loose the curve is. Lower tension gives a looser, more sweeping curve while tightening the tension brings the curve closer to a straight line. The figure below shows examples of various tension effects on a standard spline path.
Notice how the decreased tension spline follows a more sweeping path between keyframes than the standard spline. The increased tension spline tightens up the curves and, as you can see, makes a more direct path between keyframes.

**Bias**

Bias balances how much influence the previous and next keyframes have on the spline through the current keyframe. Increased bias places more importance on the smoothness between the previous and current points, while a decreased bias places more importance on the smoothness between the current and next points. The figure below shows the effect of increased and decreased bias on a standard spline path.

Notice how increasing the bias shifts the bulge of the curve to the right of keyframe 2 while decreasing the bias shifts the bulge to the left.
**Continuity**

Continuity affects how smoothly the path passes through the keyframes. The standard spline path moves smoothly through each keyframe but by adjusting the continuity, you can make the path effectively come to a point at a keyframe and then abruptly move away towards the next keyframe. The figure below shows the effects of continuity on a spline path far better than an explanation.

![Continuity Effects on a Spline](image)

Notice how increasing the continuity causes the path to overshoot the keyframe and then quickly sweep back into it. Then, the path abruptly leaves the keyframe position before returning to a smooth path.

Decreasing the continuity causes the path to smoothly sweep into a keyframe. Then, the path abruptly changes directions, towards the keyframe, before returning to a smooth path.

**Adjusting Tension, Bias, and Continuity**

Adjusting the Tension, Bias, and Continuity allow you to tailor the spline path to suit your needs. Try playing with various combinations of values to see how they affect your sequence’s motion between keyframes.

Use the following procedure to adjust the Tension, Bias, and Continuity of a spline path:

1. Create a new sequence. Refer to the section “Creating a Sequence” on page 17–6 if you need help in creating a sequence.

2. Navigate to the Spline Parameters Menu as follows:
   - Press SEL/DVE and Seq to display the Sequence Menu.
   - Press 9. Keyframe Parameters to display the Keyframe Parameters Menu.
   - Press 2. Spline Params to display the Spline Parameters Menu.
3. Use the **HUE** knob to change the tension of the spline path at the current keyframe.

4. Use the **SAT** knob to change the bias of the spline path at the current keyframe.

5. Use the **LUM** knob to change the continuity of the spline path at the current keyframe.

This completes the procedure for adjusting the **Tension**, **Bias**, and **Continuity** of a spline path.
Modifying the Keyframes of a Sequence

The **Modify Keyframes** feature enables you to edit a Keyframe and apply that change to the entire sequence, current or previous keyframes, or current and subsequent Keyframes.

The range of keyframes to modify is configured through the **Modify Keyframes Menu**, which is accessed through the **Sequence Menu**.

**Note**  
For information on modifying a single keyframe in a sequence, refer to the section “Overwriting a Keyframe” on page 17–17.

Modifying Multiple Keyframes in a Sequence

The following procedure explains how to modify keyframes in a simple, four Keyframe, sequence. We will reposition Keyframe 2 and apply those changes to Keyframes 3 and 4.

When modifying a sequence where multiple channels are assigned in a Keyframe, parameters for each channel are calculated separately. The total number of parameters modified is displayed in the **Modify Keyframes Menu** until **Perform Modify** is pressed. Once modified, the value resets to 0. Refer to the section “Working with Channels” on page 12–20 for information on using multiple channels in a keyer.

**Note**  
Lighting parameters cannot be modified across multiple keyframes at this time.

Use the following procedure to modify the range of Keyframes in a sequence using the **Modify Keyframe** function:

1. Create or load the sequence similar to the four Keyframe sequence you created in the section “Creating a Four Keyframe Sequence” on page 17–6.
2. Press **2. Next Keyframe** on the **Sequence Menu** to advance to the second Keyframe in the sequence.
3. Navigate to the **Position/Crop Menu** as follows:
   - Press **BACK** to display the **Squeeze & Tease MD Menu**.
   - Press **0. Position/Crop** to display the **Position/Crop Menu**.

**Note**  
You must be Flying a Key to display the **Position/Crop Menu** for that Key.
4. Adjust the channel(s) as required. Refer to the section “Position/Crop Menu” on page 13–2 for details.

5. Navigate to the Modify Keyframes Menu as follows:
   - Press BACK to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 2. Sequence to display the Sequence Menu.
   - Press 8. Modify Keyframes to display the Modify Keyframes Menu.

6. Select the type of modification as follows:
   - Press 0. Modify Type.
   - Use the HUE knob to select a Modify Type. You can select between the following:
     ~ Relative — Changes all parameters by the same value, relative to their original values. For example, changing the location of an image changes the image in all the selected Keyframes by the same amount, relative to their starting position.
     ~ Absolute — Changes all parameters to the exact same value for all Keyframes specified. For example, adjusting the location of an image will set that image in all selected Keyframes to the same location.

7. Set the Keyframe Range you want to apply the changes to as follows:
   - Press 1. Modify Range.
   - Use the HUE knob to select the first keyframe in the range to be modified. In the example above, Keyframe 2 is the first to be modified.
   - Use the SAT knob to select the last keyframe in the range to be modified. In the example above, the changes will be applied to Keyframes 2, 3, and 4 inclusive.


9. Save your sequence as follows:
   - Press SEL/DVE and LOAD SEQ to display the Load/Save Seq. Menu.
• Use the knobs to select a sequence position in the list.
• Press **1. Save Sequence** to save the sequence in that position.

**Note**

Only the Keyframes in the selected range will be modified. If you wish to modify a Keyframe that is not in the chosen range, you will have to save changes to that keyframe using the **Overwrite Keyframe** feature. Refer to the section “Overwriting a Keyframe” on page 17–17 for details on using this feature.

This completes the procedure to modify the range of keyframes in a sequence using the **Modify Keyframe** function.
Overwriting a Keyframe

This section outlines how to modify a single keyframe that is not in a chosen range of a sequence. For example, you have applied a change to the X-position of Keyframes 3 to 5 in a sequence that includes a total of five Keyframes. You now require to change the Y-position of Keyframe 2 in the same sequence.

Use the following procedure to overwrite a Keyframe:

1. Ensure the sequence is loaded. Refer to the section “Loading a Sequence” on page 17–20 for instructions.
2. Make your changes to the selected Keyframe parameters.
3. Press 4. Overwrite Keyframe. The keyframe is replaced with the new parameters.
4. Save your sequence as follows:
   • Press SEL/DVE and LOAD SEQ to display the Load/Save Seq. Menu.
   • Use the knobs to select a sequence position in the list.
   • Press 1. Save Sequence to save the sequence.

This completes the procedure to overwrite a Keyframe using the Overwrite Keyframe feature.
Adding a Hold to a Sequence

You can insert a Hold at the end of any Keyframe. A Hold differs from a Keyframe Duration in that it requires manual input to continue by pressing the AUTO TRANS button.

**Important**

A Hold is only implemented when running a sequence using AUTO TRANS.

Adding a Hold to a Sequence

Use the following procedure to add a Hold to a sequence:

1. Navigate to the Sequence Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press 2. Sequences to display the Sequence Menu.

2. Program the Keyframe. Refer to the section “Creating a Sequence” on page 17–6 for more information.

3. Press 2. Next Keyframe or 1. Previous Keyframe until you reach the Keyframe you want the sequence to hold at.


5. Press 1. Hold to display the Hold Menu.

---

**Keyframe Parameters — Hold Menu**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyframe Parameters</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Duration</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Hold</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Spline Params</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hold: On

Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify
6. Add a Hold to the sequence as follows:
   - Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select On.
   - Press the right SEL button to accept the new settings.

7. Save your sequence as follows:
   - Press SEL/DVE and LOAD SEQ to display the Load/Save Seq. Menu.
   - Use the knobs to select a sequence position in the list.
   - Press 1. Save Sequence to save the sequence in that position.

8. For ease of use, you should give each sequence a unique, descriptive name. Refer to the section “Renaming a Sequence” on page 17–21 for information on renaming a sequence.

This completes the procedure to add a Hold to a sequence.
## Working with Sequences

This section discusses how to load, rename, and delete sequences. Additional operational notes are also included.

### Loading a Sequence

Use the following procedure to load any of the available sequences:

1. Navigate to the **Sequence Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group** to display the S&T MD Menu.
   - Press **2. Sequences** to display the **Sequence Menu**.

2. Load the sequence as follows:
   - Press **0. Load/Save Sequence** to display the **Load/Save Seq. Menu**.
     - Use the knobs to select the sequence from the list.
     - Press **0. Load Sequence** to load the sequence and display the **Sequence Menu**.

   The sequence appears in the workspace.

This completes the procedure to load any of the available sequences from memory.
Renaming a Sequence

Use the following procedure to rename a sequence:

1. Navigate to the Sequence Menu as follows:
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 8. S&T MD to display the S&T MD Menu.
   • Press 2. Sequence to display the Sequence Menu.

2. Load the sequence you want to rename as follows:
   • Press 0. Load/Save Sequence to display the Load/Save Seq. Menu.
     - Use the knobs to select the sequence from the list.

3. Rename the sequence as follows:
   • Press 0. Load Sequence.
     - Press 3. Rename Sequence to display the Rename Sequence Menu.
     - Use the ASPECT knob in the Effects Control Group to scroll through the letters and highlight the letter you want to use. Any invalid characters on the same line as the currently highlighted character will appear dark grey and will be skipped as you scroll through the letters.

4. When you are finished entering the sequence name, press 3. Accept.

This completes the procedure to rename any of the available sequences.
Deleting a Sequence
Use the following procedure to delete a sequence:

1. Navigate to the Load/Save Seq. Menu. Refer to the section “Loading a Sequence” on page 17–20 for details.
2. From the Load/Save Seq. Menu, press 2. Delete Sequence to display a confirmation message.
3. When prompted with the message:
   • Press 0. Confirm to continue with the deletion.
   • Press 1. Cancel to terminate the deletion.

This completes the procedure to delete a sequence.

Previewing a Sequence
You can review the sequence on your preview monitor before you bring it to air.

Use the following procedure to preview your sequence before you bring it to air:

1. Fly the Key with the sequence loaded and select it in the next Transition area of your switcher.
2. Press the DISS, WIPE and DVE SEND buttons at the same time to display the Runtime Menu.
3. Run the sequence on the preview monitor using the Auto Trans button or the Fader.

This completes the procedure to preview your sequence before you bring it to air.

Sequence Memory Notes
Please note the following important points regarding saving and loading sequences:

• The switcher enables you to store up to 100 sequences.
• You can store up to 800 Keyframes in total.
• Each sequence can have up to 25 Keyframes.
Running a Sequence

The System Control Group indicates the programmed sequence rate in frames. If the sequence has been manually set to run at a different rate, the text on the Display in the System Control Group alternates between AUTS and OVER.

Operating Tip

Double-pressing the DISS, WIPE and DVE SEND buttons at the same time displays a list of sequences for quick access via the Pattern Control Group. Refer to the section “Programming Pattern Control Buttons” on page 17–26 for more information.

Remember, the sequence rate determines how fast the sequence will run on the switcher. When you create the sequence, you establish its duration. This rate is the default sequence rate. If you want the sequence to run at a different rate, you can set a new rate manually.

Note

When attempting to run a sequence on a background rather than a key, it will automatically run as a dissolve.

You cannot select PST Black or Trans PV with sequence mode.

Running a Sequence at the Default Rate

Use the following procedure to run the sequence at the default sequence rate:

1. Ensure the sequence is loaded. Refer to the section “Loading a Sequence” on page 17–20 for instructions.
2. Press the DISS, WIPE and DVE SEND buttons at the same time.

Operating Tip

You can also press SEL/DVE and RUN FWD or SEL/DVE and RUN REV. You must have a Fly-Key selected as the next transition.

Keep in mind when the sequence runs in reverse, it snaps to the last keyframe in the sequence.
3. Run the sequence using the fader or buttons in the **Transition Control Group** as follows
   - Use the **AUTO TRANS** button to run the sequence automatically.
   - Use the **Fader** to run the sequence manually. The fader movement controls the rate that the sequence is run in.
   - Use the **CUT** button to cut a Key on or off.

   **Important**  If a Hold is inserted in the sequence it will only be implemented when running a sequence using Auto Trans. Refer to the section “Adding a Hold to a Sequence” on page 17–18 for more information.

This completes the procedure to run a sequence.

### Running a Sequence at a Specific Rate

The **System Control Group** shows the time in the numeric display and **AUT1** and/or **AUT2** as the text flag.

When a sequence is actually in progress in Auto Trans mode, the **MODE** display shows **AUTS** and the numeric display shows the duration of the sequence. If both keys are transitioning, the numeric display shows the longer of the two durations.

Use the following procedure to select a specific rate:

1. Ensure the sequence is loaded. Refer to the section “Loading a Sequence” on page 17–20 for instructions.

2. Note the current transition rate in the display of the **System Control Group**. If the rate is not showing, press the **MENU/EDIT** button to turn the menu off and display the transition rate.

3. Press the **SEL** button in the **System Control Group**.

4. Use the **↓** and **↑** buttons to scroll to the desired rate in frames — from 1 to 999. The new rate is updated automatically in the display.

This completes the procedure to run the sequence at a specific rate. When both keys are selected for sequence transition, the panel displays both sequence durations, alternating; when only one key is selected, its duration is shown.
Running a Sequence with a Hold

A Hold inserted in a sequence requires manual input to continue when the sequence is being run.

Use the following procedure to run a sequence with a Hold:

1. Load a sequence. Refer to the section “Loading a Sequence” on page 17–20 for details.

2. Run the sequence using AUTO TRANS. Refer to the section “Running a Sequence” on page 17–23 for details.
   
   When you run the sequence, it will stop when it reaches the point where the Hold was inserted.

3. Press the flashing AUTO TRANS button to continue running the sequence.
   
   The sequence will continue as saved.

This completes the procedure to run a sequence with a Hold.
Using the Pattern Control Buttons

Pattern Buttons 8 and 9 are sometimes used by the system when loading a sequence using the menus. Keep this in mind when assigning sequences to these Pattern Buttons, as they may be overwritten.

- If you load a sequence in Key 1, the system checks whether there is a pattern button associated with that sequence. If no button is associated with the sequence, the system will use Pattern Button 8 (overwriting the program previously assigned to that button).
- If you load a sequence in Key 2, the system checks whether there is a pattern button associated with that sequence. If no button is associated with the sequence, the system will use Pattern Button 9 (overwriting the program previously assigned to that button).
- If you press WIPE with the key flown, double-pressing the assigned pattern button will assign the sequence to a wipe. Pressing the AUTO TRANS button will then run the wipe. Moving the fader handle runs the wipe at a speed controlled by the fader movement.

Programming Pattern Control Buttons

The sequences you create and save can be mapped to buttons in the Pattern Control Group.

Use the following procedure to map a sequence to a Pattern Control button:

1. Ensure the sequence is loaded. Refer to the section “Loading a Sequence” on page 17–20 for instructions.
2. Press the DISS, WIPE and DVE SEND buttons at the same time.
3. Double-press the Pattern Button you want to program.
4. Using the and buttons in the System Control Group, scroll to the desired sequence number.
5. Press SEL in the System Control Group to save the assignment.

This completes the procedure to program pattern buttons.
Introduction to Squeeze & Tease Wipes

A Squeeze & Tease Wipe is a transition that brings a Key on-air or moves a Key off-air.

For your convenience, a set of pre-programmed sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes are supplied on the Product Resources CD (the sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes are pre-installed for you when you purchase a new switcher).

To load the sequences onto your switcher, you must copy the Squeeze & Tease Wipes from the CD to a USB Drive. Then, you may recall them on your switcher control panel. Refer to the section “Recalling an Entire Set of Sequences” on page 17–37 for more information.

Understanding Squeeze & Tease MD Wipes

Squeeze & Tease Wipes are used to change the status of a Key (on air or off air) and can be done on Keys or Backgrounds. You can use the standard Squeeze & Tease Wipes provided with Squeeze & Tease or create your own customized wipe patterns. Customized Squeeze & Tease Wipes can be saved and recalled for later use.

Squeeze & Tease Wipes are built in much the same way as sequences, but with a few additional rules. To create a customized Squeeze & Tease Wipe, it is important that you have read and understood the section discussing sequences. Refer to the section “Working with Sequences” on page 17–20.

To build a Squeeze & Tease Wipe, you should start with a full screen, centered image. This is for creating the Squeeze & Tease Wipe only — when it is actually running, the image will not necessarily be full-screen or centered. What you are building is the pattern of effects that will be applied to the image. You create Keyframes for the effects you want and select a Squeeze & Tease MD Wipe modifier. The Squeeze & Tease MD Wipe Modifier feature determines the method used to bring the image off-air:

- **Knife Edge** — the image rotates so that it is edge-on to the viewer and cannot be seen
- **Slide Off** — the image moves off screen
- **Spin Off** — the image turns out of the picture
- **None** — a user-specified method such as distance or cropping

The following example shows a simple background wipe with three Keyframes. In this example:

1. **Example of a Background Wipe**
   - The image starts full-screen and centered
   - The image moves to the top left corner of the screen
   - The image slides off the screen
As with sequences, you can set the type of motion for each Keyframe to indicate how that Keyframe should move to the next Keyframe:

- **Smooth motion** — The image accelerates slowly at the start and decelerates slowly at the end of the sequence. The motion between the Keyframes is a straight line.

- **Spline motion** — The image accelerates slowly at the start and decelerates slowly at the end of the sequence. The motion between the Keyframes is a user modifiable spline-curve that smoothly moves the image through each keyframe. Refer to the section “Modifying Spline Motion” on page 17–10 for information on modifying spline motion paths.

- **Linear motion** — The sequence moves from Keyframe to Keyframe at a constant velocity. This produces a step-motion effect.

You may want to experiment with different types of motion when creating your wipe to see which type will work best with the effect you are trying to produce.

You can also specify how quickly you want the image to move from Keyframe to Keyframe.

---

**Note**

When you are building a Squeeze & Tease Wipe, you use the same menus as when you are creating a sequence. Basically, you are creating a sequence, then running this as a Squeeze & Tease Wipe. If you are not familiar with these menus, refer to the section “Working with Sequences” on page 17–20 for detailed descriptions.
Creating a Squeeze & Tease Wipe

The process for building a Key Squeeze & Tease Wipe or a Background Squeeze & Tease Wipe is the same. To build a Squeeze & Tease Wipe, you create the pattern that the image will follow. When you run the Squeeze & Tease Wipe on a Key, the image follows the shape of the pattern you have created, so it does not matter where the Key is on the screen when you apply the wipe.

**Important**

Squeeze & Tease Wipe motions are relative by default. Images will move a relative amount based on your wipe keyframes so different sized images or images starting in different places will not follow identical paths for the same wipe.

Sometimes the image needs to travel further to get off screen than at other times (depending on its starting location). When you use a preset, for example, **Slide Off**, the system creates a virtual “last Keyframe” to put the image where it should be in order to move it off screen. Refer to the following example when creating your Squeeze & Tease wipe.

---

### Creating a Squeeze & Tease Wipe

This section shows you how to create a simple wipe that starts with a Key in lower right corner of the screen. The Key is then moved to the upper left corner, followed by it sliding off the screen to the right.

Use the following procedure to create a Squeeze & Tease Wipe:

1. Create and insert the first Keyframe in the sequence, refer to the section “Creating a Sequence” on page 17–6 for details.
2. Adjust any parameters for the first Keyframe (duration or type of motion). The system fills in the frames between the Keyframes to create the effect.

**Note**

When this is the first Keyframe in the sequence, delete the existing workspace if the timeline is not already empty.
3. Create the second Keyframe as follows:
   - Press **SEL/DVE** and **POSN** to display the **Position Menu**.
   - Use the knobs, or the **Positioner**, to move away from the viewer and into the top left-hand corner of the screen.
   - Press **SEL/DVE** and **INS Kf**.
     The Keyframe is added to the sequence. Adjust any parameters for the Keyframe (number of frames or type of motion). The system fills in the frames between the keyframes to create the effect.

4. Press **SEL/DVE** and **SEQ** to display the **Sequence Menu**.

5. Press **7. Wipe Modifier** to display the **Wipe Modifier Menu**. The Wipe Modifier selections are displayed at the bottom of the **Sequence Menu**.

6. Use the **HUE** knob to select the type of wipe that will be used to move the image off of the screen. The available wipes are as follows:
   - **Knife Edge** — This wipe finishes with the image edge-on to the viewer.
   - **Slide Off** — This wipe moves the image directly off the screen. This is done by changing the location of the image on the X-Axis and/or the Y-Axis. This is the default wipe.
   - **Spin Off** — This wipe rotates the image off the screen. The rotation between the second-last Keyframe and the final Keyframe determines the direction and amount of rotation.
   - **Dissolve** — This wipe dissolves the image out of view by taking on a transparency of 100%. Use the **Dissolve At** knob to indicate where in the timeline you want the dissolve to begin, for example, set **Dissolve At** to 75% to begin the dissolve 75% of the way through the wipe.
   - **None** — This wipe takes the image off the screen using a parameter other than X or Y position or rotation. When you use the **None** modifier, you must set the parameters so that the image will end off screen no matter what its starting position. To use this wipe, select **None**, then create a Keyframe where the image is off the screen. The most common ways to achieve this are as follows:
     ~ Adjusting the Z location so that the image appears to move away from the viewer until it disappears (positive Z location).
     ~ Adjusting the Z location so that the image appears to move toward the viewer until it disappears (negative Z location).
Cropping the image horizontally, vertically, or both until it appears to disappear from view.

**Note**

When you use the **None** modifier, the system does not compensate for the starting position of the image when the wipe is applied. It runs the pattern exactly as it was set up.

Sometimes the image needs to travel further to get off screen than at other times (depending on its starting location). When you use a preset, for example, **Slide Off**, the system creates a virtual “last Keyframe” to put the image where it should be in order to move it off screen.

7. Save your changes as follows:

- Press **0. Load/Save Seq.** to display the **Load/Save Sequence Menu**.
- Use the knobs to select a position in the list.
- Press **1. Save Sequence** to save the wipe.

This completes the procedure to create a Squeeze & Tease Wipe.

The system does not differentiate between sequence memories and wipe memories. It is suggested that you give each wipe a unique descriptive name to make it easy to identify. Refer to the section “Renaming a Sequence” on page 17–21 for information on renaming sequences.

**Loading a Squeeze & Tease Wipe**

Use the following procedure to load any of the available Squeeze & Tease Wipes:

1. Navigate to the **Sequence Menu** as follows:

   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group** to display the **S&T MD Menu**.
   - Press **2. Sequences** to display the **Sequence Menu**.

2. Press **0. Load/Save Sequence** to display the **Load/Save Sequence Menu**.

3. Use the knobs, or the positioner, to select the sequence from the list.

4. Press **0. Load Sequence**. The sequence appears in the workspace.

This completes the procedure to load any of the available Squeeze & Tease Wipes.

**Operating Tip**

Like sequences, Squeeze & Tease Wipes can contain **Holds** that pause playback until you press the **AUTO TRANS** button. Refer to the section “Adding a Hold to a Sequence” on page 17–18 for information on inserting a Hold into your wipe.
Running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe

When running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe transition, the system dynamically allocates channels to produce the appropriate effect. If there are not enough channels available to complete the Squeeze & Tease Wipe, a dissolve is performed. Once the Squeeze & Tease Wipe is complete, the internally allocated channels are freed for you to use.

Running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe

Use the following procedure to run a Squeeze & Tease Wipe:

1. Ensure the Squeeze & Tease Wipe is loaded. Refer to the section “Loading a Squeeze & Tease Wipe” on page 9–29 for more information.

2. Press the WIPE and DVE buttons at the same time.

3. Run the wipe using one of the following methods:
   - Press the AUTO TRANS button to run the Squeeze & Tease Wipe automatically.
   - Use the Fader to run it manually. Manually, the Squeeze & Tease Wipe always ends at the end of the Fader movement (up or down).

Running the Squeeze & Tease Wipe

This completes the procedure for running a sequence. In the last Keyframe, the image will be off screen. At the end of the Squeeze & Tease Wipe, the Key cuts off-air.

Notes on Running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe

Note the following points when running a Squeeze & Tease Wipe:

- You can change the rate at which the Squeeze & Tease Wipe runs. Refer to the section “Running a Sequence” on page 17–23 for more information.
- You can Squeeze & Tease Wipe a Key whether the FLY KEY is on or not so you do not have to remember to press FLY KEY before performing a wipe.
Storing Sequences and Wipes

For archive purposes, and to keep safe backup copies of your sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes, you should store your entire set of sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes to the switcher’s hard drive or a USB Drive.

You can store the entire set of registers or you may store individual sequences, Squeeze & Tease Wipes and memories. Synergy files are designed in a proprietary compressed format that can only be read by a Synergy switcher. However, the files can be copied and saved on a computer.

The following topics are discussed in this section:

• Storing Squeeze & Tease Sequences
• Storing Individual Squeeze & Tease Sequences

Storing Squeeze & Tease Sequences

An entire set of sequences are stored as the single file ST3DSEQ.TZA.

Use the following procedure to store the entire set of sequence registers as one file:

1. If you are using a USB Drive, plug it into the USB port on the front of the switcher. Wait at least 5 seconds to allow the system to recognize the USB Drive.

2. Navigate to the Dest/Source Menu as follows:
   • Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   • Press 5. Disk to display the Disk Menu.
   • Press 0. Dest/Source to display the Dest/Source Menu.

3. Select the storage device you want to use to store your set of sequences to as follows:
   • Press 0. Dest/Source.
   • Use the ‡ and § buttons to select the storage device you want to use. You can select between the following:
     ~ Hard Drive — This option will allow you to store the files on the internal hard drive. There are 100 (00 through 99) setups available to store files.
     ~ USB — This option will allow you to recall the files from a USB Drive. You must wait 5 seconds after inserting the USB Drive into the USB Port before

Note

Both sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes are stored as sequences in the system.
you can save or recall files. Refer to the section “Notes on Using a USB Drive” on page 9–16 for further information.

4. Select a setup, or location, for the storage of the files as follows:
   - Press **1. Set Names**.
   - Use the ‼ and ‿ buttons to select the **Setup** you want to use. You can select from **SETUP (00)** to **SETUP (99)**.

5. Press **BACK** to display the **Disk Menu**.

6. Press **1. Store** to display the **Store Menu**.

```
Store Menu

0. Reserved          5. Store Indiv 3D Wipes
1. Store Memories    6. Store Bus Map
2. Store Personality
3. Store Installation
4. Store 3D Wipes

Store Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MENU</th>
<th>100</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>SEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exit</td>
<td>Previous</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>Accept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```

7. Press **4. Store 3D Wipes**.

**Caution**
Do NOT remove a USB Drive from the switcher before the LED on the USB port goes out. Doing so may destroy the data on your USB Drive, as well as the data on the next one you insert into the USB port.

8. Confirm saving the wipes to a storage device or cancel the procedure as follows:
   - Press **0. Yes** to save the wipes.
   - Press **1. No** to exit the menus, without saving the wipes to a storage device.

This completes the procedure to store the entire set of sequence registers as one file.

### Storing Individual Squeeze & Tease Sequences

When you save a specific 3D sequence, it is saved as a single file named **STSEQ##.TZA**. The ## is the number of the sequence you have selected to store to a storage device.

Use the following procedure to store a specific 3D sequence:

1. If you are using a USB Drive, plug it into the USB port on the front of the switcher. Wait at least 5 seconds to allow the system to recognize the USB Drive.

2. Navigate to the **Dest/Source Menu** as follows:
   - Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   - Press **5. Disk** to display the **Disk Menu**.
   - Press **0. Dest/Source** to display the **Dest/Source Menu**.
3. Select the storage device you want to use to store your set of sequences to as follows:
   - Press **0. Dest/Source**.
   - Use the ‹ and › buttons to select the storage device you want to use. You can select between the following:
     - **Hard Drive** — This option will allow you to store the files on the internal hard drive. There are 100 (00 through 99) setups available to store files.
     - **USB** — This option will allow you to recall the files from a USB Drive. You must wait 5 seconds after inserting the USB Drive into the USB Port before you can save or recall files. Refer to the section “Notes on Using a USB Drive” on page 9–16 for further information.

4. Select a setup, or location, for the storage of the files as follows:
   - Press **1. Set Names**.
   - Use the ‹ and › buttons to select the Setup you want to use. You can select from SETUP (00) to SETUP (99).

5. Press **BACK** to display the Disk Menu.

6. Press **1. Store** to display the Store Menu.

7. Press **5. Store Indiv. 3D Wipe** to display the Store Individual Items Menu.

8. Select the sequence and the location to save it to as follows:
   - Use the **HUE** knob to select the switcher sequence number that you want to save to the storage device.
   - Use the **SAT** knob to select the storage device location for the sequence you want to save.
9. Press **SEL** in the **System Control Group**.

    **Caution**  
    Do NOT remove a USB Drive from the switcher before the LED on the USB port goes out. Doing so may destroy the data on your USB Drive, as well as the data on the next one you insert into the USB port.

This completes the procedure to save a specific 3D sequence.
Recalling Sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes

Use the following procedure to recall sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes from the switcher hard drive or a USB Drive. Both sequences and Squeeze & Tease Wipes are stored as sequences in the system. Sequence registers are in the file ST3DSEQ.TZA.

Important

If you are going to recall the entire set of sequence registers, ensure that your current on-line set of sequence registers is stored on the switcher hard drive or a USB Drive. If you have not stored them, they will be overwritten when you recall a new file.

You can recall the entire set of registers or you can recall individual sequences and wipes, as desired.

Recalling an Entire Set of Sequences

Use the following procedure to recall an entire set of sequences:

1. If you are using a USB Drive, plug it into the USB port on the front of the switcher. Wait at least 5 seconds to allow the system to recognize the USB Drive.

2. Navigate to the Dest/Source Menu as follows:
   - Press MENU to display the Main Menu.
   - Press 5. Disk to display the Disk Menu.
   - Press 0. Dest/Source to display the Dest/Source Menu.

3. Select the storage device you want to recall your set of sequences from as follows:
   - Press 0. Dest/Source.
   - Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select the storage device you want to use. You can select between the following:
     - **Hard Drive** — This option will allow you to recall the files on the internal hard drive.
     - **USB** — This option will allow you to recall the files from a USB Drive. You must wait 5 seconds after inserting the USB Drive into the USB Port before you can recall files. Refer to the section “Notes on Using a USB Drive” on page 9–16 for further information.
4. Select a setup, or location, of the files as follows:
   • Press **1. Set Names**.
   • Use the ↓ and ↑ buttons to select the **Setup** you want to use.
5. Press **BACK** to display the **Disk Menu**.
6. Press **2. Recall** to display the **Recall Menu**.

   ![Recall Menu Table]

   **Recall Menu**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recall</th>
<th>5. Recall Indiv 3D Wipe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Reserved</td>
<td>6. Recall Bus Map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Recall Memories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Recall Personality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Recall Installation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*4. Recall 3D Wipes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
   %indicates the file is present on disk

   Hard Drive: SETUP(00)

7. Press **4. Recall 3D Wipes**.
8. Confirm recalling the 3D Wipes to a storage device as follows:
   • Press **0. Yes** to recall the 3D Wipes.
   • Press **1. No** to exit the menus, without recalling the 3D Wipes.

This completes the procedure to recall an entire set of 3D Wipes.

### Recalling a Specific Squeeze & Tease Wipe

Use the following procedure to recall a specific Squeeze & Tease Wipe:

1. Navigate to the **Dest/Source Menu** as follows:
   • Press **MENU** to display the **Main Menu**.
   • Press **5. Disk** to display the **Disk Menu**.
   • Press **0. Dest/Source** to display the **Dest/Source Menu**.

   ![Dest/Source Menu Table]

   **Dest/Source Menu**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dest/Source</th>
<th>Hard Drive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Dest/Source</td>
<td>SETUP(00)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Set Names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Hard Drive: SETUP(00)
2. Select the storage device you want to recall your Wipe from as follows:
   - Press 0. Dest/Source.
   - Use the \ and ↑ buttons to select the storage device you want to use. You can select between the following:
     ~ **Hard Drive** — This option will allow you to recall the files on the internal hard drive.
     ~ **USB** — This option will allow you to recall the files from a USB Drive. You must wait 5 seconds after inserting the USB Drive into the USB Port before you can recall files. Refer to the section “Notes on Using a USB Drive” on page 9–16 for further information.

3. Select the setup, or location, of the files as follows:
   - Press 1. Set Names.
   - Use the \ and ↑ buttons to select the Setup.

4. Press BACK to display the Disk Menu.

5. Press 2. Recall to display the Recall Menu.

6. Press 5. Recall Indiv 3D Wipe to recall a specific Squeeze & Tease Wipe.

7. Confirm the recall as follows:
   - Press 0. Yes to recall the selected category of registers.
   - Press 1. No to exit the menus, without making any changes. The system returns to the previously stored settings.

This completes the procedure for recalling a specific 3D Wipe.
In This Chapter

This chapter provides instructions for adding lighting effects to keys in Squeeze & Tease MD. These lighting effects are based on a model that contains directional light and ambient light.

Directional light emits light in all directions, much like a light bulb. The amount of light on the image decreases with the distance the light is from the image. It can be used to define sharp edges and deepen shadows in your image, to give an appearance of depth. You can adjust the position and intensity of the directional light to vary the appearance of your image.

Ambient light is used to set the lighting level for the entire image. It illuminates the image with a flat, uniform light, like daylight in the real world. The lighting model enables you to control the level of ambient light for different overall effects.

You can set the Luminance Thresholds for the maximum and minimum light levels to fine-tune your lighting.

Lighting parameters can be individually set or a number of presets may be used to quickly create lighting effects.

The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

- Using the Lighting Menus
- Lighting Setup
- Working with Multiple Channels

Note

The instructions in this chapter use the hotkey method to access the main functions of Squeeze & Tease MD. You may also use the menu system to access these functions.
Using the Lighting Menus

Use the following procedure to access the Lighting Menus:

2. Press SEL/DVE+ Light to display the Lighting Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lighting</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Lighting Setup</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Position</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Presets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Auto Follow</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Luminance Clipping</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. To access each menu item, use the pattern buttons in the Effects Control Group.
4. To adjust Lighting parameters, use the positioner or Mattes Color knobs.

This completes the procedure to access the Lighting Menu.
Lighting Setup

This section describes how to adjust the following parameters:

- Lighting Model
- Position
- Presets
- Auto Follow
- Luminance Clipping

Lighting Model

Use the following procedure to select the type of lighting:

1. Navigate to the Lighting Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press SEL/DVE+ Light to display the Lighting Menu.

2. Set the Lighting Setup option by toggling 0. Lighting Setup to one of the following:
   - None — Use this option to turn the lighting model off. If the source is set to None, the lighting parameters are not enabled.
   - Natural — Use this option to enable the lighting model.

3. Adjust the lighting using the following knobs:
   - Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to adjust the intensity of the directional light.
   - Use or SAT knob, or move the Positioner up and down, to adjust the ambient light level. For increased shadows and high contrast, use a low Ambient light level.

   Operating Tip

   To give the image a more “flattened” effect, increase the Ambient light level. To rely exclusively on directional light, set the Ambient light to zero.

This completes the procedure to select the type of lighting.
Position

You can position the light anywhere in 3D space, including locations in front of or behind the image. The values for each parameter are displayed in the lower half of the menu.

Use the following procedure to adjust the position of the directional light:

1. Navigate to the **Lighting Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **SEL/DVE+ Light** to display the **Lighting Menu**.

2. Press **1. Position** to display the **Position of Directional Light Menu**.

3. Adjust the lights X, Y, and Z co-ordinates as follows:
   - Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to control the horizontal position of the light on screen.
   - Use the **SAT** knob, or move the **Positioner up and down**, to control the vertical position of the light on screen.
   - Use the **LUM** knob, or move the **Positioner clockwise and counter-clockwise**, to change the position of the light on the Z-Axis.

This completes the procedure to adjust the position of the directional light.

Presets

Create a directional light by selecting one of the preset directional lights. Presets include predefined directional light positions, and Intensity and Ambient-level presets, such as Dim or Ambient Only.

Use the following procedure to use one of the lighting presets:

1. Navigate to the **Lighting Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **SEL/DVE+ Light** to display the **Lighting Menu**.

2. Press **2. Presets** to display the **Presets Menu**.
3. Use the HUE knob, or move the Positioner left and right, to select a preset as follows:

- **Custom** — Use this preset to control the lighting parameters individually to create a custom effect. This is the default setting.
- **Center** — Use this preset to create a light source centred directly above the key image. The light fades off towards the bottom of the image.
- **Top Left** — Use this preset to create a light source above and to the left of the key image. The light fades off towards the bottom right corner of the image.
- **Top Right** — Use this preset to create a light source above and to the right of the key image. The light fades off towards the bottom left corner of the image.
- **Close** — Use this preset to create a light source centered above but quite close to the key image. This creates a brighter, washed-out effect.
- **Dim** — Use this preset to create a low-intensity directional light with low ambient light.
- **Ambient Only** — Use this preset to rely on ambient light only. This preset does not produce a lighting effect; it simply turns the lighting model on. It is often used with wipes and sequences.

This completes the procedure to apply a lighting preset.

**Notes on Using Lighting Presets**

Refer to the following notes when applying a lighting preset:

- When creating a 3D sequence or wipe with lighting effects, use the **Ambient Only** preset on the first keyframe. This produces no noticeable lighting effect, but ensures that the lighting model is turned **On** — so that any lighting effects you define flow smoothly.
- You can also start with one of the presets provided (for example, **Dim, Ambient Only**). Then press **2. Presets** and use the top knob to select the desired option.
- When running wipes, set the lighting to **None** before you run the wipe if you want to use the lighting effects you applied when you created the wipe. Setting the lighting to **Natural** will override any lighting effects in the wipe itself.
Auto Follow

The Auto Follow feature allows you to set how you want the light to move with the image when you are using a sequence or wipe.

Use the following procedure to enable the Auto Follow feature:

1. Navigate to the Lighting Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers Group.
   - Press SEL/DVE + Light to display the Lighting Menu.
2. Press 3. Auto Follow to display the Auto Follow Menu.
3. Set the Auto Follow option by toggling 3. Auto Follow to one of the following:
   - On — Use this option to have the light source keep its relative position, based on the center of the key. This helps to keep the lighting constant when moving an image in a sequence or wipe. If the image rotates, however, you will see the light move as the plane is rotated.
   - Off — Use this option to have the light source keeps to the position coordinates you have defined, regardless of the location of the image.

This completes the procedure to enable the Auto Follow feature.

Luminance Clipping

Minimum brightness is represented by 0.0% and 100.0% represents maximum brightness. For example, if you set the light to a high intensity, this may produce some washout on screen.

In this instance, you would clip the maximum light to a lower level. If the image appears too dark, adjust the minimum light level to a higher setting.
Use the following procedure to clip the maximum light and minimum light levels of an image:

1. Navigate to the **Lighting Menu** as follows:
   - Press **FLY KEY** in the **Effects Keyers Group**.
   - Press **SEL/DVE + Light** to display the **Lighting Menu**.

2. Press **4. Luminance Clipping** to display the **Luminance Clipping Menu**.

3. Use the **Mattes Color** knobs to adjust luminance clipping. The values for each parameter are displayed in the lower half of the menu.
   - Use the **HUE** knob, or move the **Positioner left and right**, to adjust the minimum luminance threshold.
   - Use the **SAT** knob, or move the **Positioner up and down**, to adjust the maximum luminance threshold.

This completes the procedure to clip the maximum light and minimum light levels of an image.
Working with Multiple Channels

You can apply and adjust lighting effects on two channels at the same time.

Use the following procedure to apply and adjust lighting effects on multiple channels:

1. Navigate to the Lighting Menu as follows:
   - Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers group.
   - Press SEL/DVE + Light to display the Lighting Menu.
2. Press SEL/DVE + Ch1+2 to select both channels.

The following table shows how the Lighting effects behave when working with both channels selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lighting Parameter</th>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td>Coordinates are the same for both channels.</td>
<td>The values are displayed. The joystick or knobs can be used to position the light source for both channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Channel 1 and Channel 2 have different light source positions.</td>
<td>A message is displayed to indicate the values are different. The values for Channel 1 are displayed. The joystick or knobs can be used to change the position coordinates by an equal percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensity and Ambient Light Levels</td>
<td>All values are the same for both channels.</td>
<td>The values are displayed. The knobs can be used to adjust the levels for both channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminance Clipping</td>
<td>All values are the same for both channels.</td>
<td>The values are displayed. The knobs can be used to adjust the thresholds for both channels.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When working with two channels, a quick way to give any lighting parameter equal values is to adjust the value to 100.0% with both channels selected. Then you can adjust the parameter to the desired value for both channels.
WARP Effects

In This Chapter

Squeeze & Tease MD provides a complete range of WARP effects such as page turn with adjustable curl, ripple, globe, splits, and many more. You can combine WARP with pre-processor effects like defocus or colorization to produce dramatic effects. WARP can be used with stills or live video. In order to use WARP effects, the Squeeze & Tease MD WARP option and WARP card(s) must be installed in your switcher.

Note

Squeeze & Tease MD WARP cannot be used with a 1080p video format at this time.

This chapter provides detailed instructions for applying WARP effects to keys. The following topics are discussed in this chapter:

• Selecting and Working with WARP Effects

Also, the following WARP effects are discussed in this chapter:

• Film
• Globe
• Heart
• Lens Flare
• Melt
• Obscure
• Page Roll
• Pixie Dust
• Ripple
• Split
• Star
• Stretch
Selecting and Working with WARP Effects

The following sections describe each type of WARP and provide specific instructions for adjusting the WARP parameters. The instructions in this chapter use the hotkey method to access the main functions of Squeeze & Tease MD. You may also use the menu system to access these functions.

Operating Tip

When using a WARP effect as a wipe, you can apply it to a background or a key. You can use a WARP effect in a sequence and have the values interpolate between keyframes.

Use the following procedure to access the WARP Menus:

1. Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers group.
2. Press SEL/DVE + WARP to display the S&T MD WARP Menu.

Assignment

Use the following procedure to access the WARP Menus:

1. Press FLY KEY in the Effects Keyers group.
2. Press SEL/DVE + WARP to display the S&T MD WARP Menu.

Operating Tip

When the FLY KEY is not enabled, an error message displays. You must first enable the FLY KEY before attempting to continue.

Operating Tip

When working with an image, each time you select a new type of WARP, the parameters return to their default values.

This completes the procedure for access the WARP Menus.
WARP Resources

A WARP card installed in your switcher provides a single WARP resource. WARP resources are used when applying WARP effects to three areas corresponding to the Background, Key 1, and Key 2 buses. One WARP resource is required to deliver a WARP effect in any of the three areas and only one WARP resource can be used in each area at a time. There is one notable exception: when a WARP is used as a wipe transition on the background bus and either or both Key 1 and Key 2, only a single WARP resource is used. This allows you to apply a WARP to a key and use a second WARP as a wipe transition on that key as long as the background is set to transition as well.

The table below illustrates various scenarios and the number of WARP resources required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>WARP Resources Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applying a WARP Effect to a key</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running a Sequence containing a WARP effect on a key</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running a Squeeze &amp; Tease MD Wipe with a WARP effect on...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Background bus</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Background bus + Key 1 Bus</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Background bus + Key 2 Bus</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Background bus + Key 1 and Key 2 Bus</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Key 1 Bus</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Key 2 Bus</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Key 1 + Key 2 Bus</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Freeing WARP Resources

If you try to use a WARP effect when all the WARP resources are in use, a warning message appears on your menu allowing you to choose how the resource conflict is resolved.

Warning!

Warp resources are currently in use:
Warp 1 - Used by MLE 1 - Key 1
Warp 2 - Used by MLE 1 - Key 2

Do you wish to free a Warp resource?
0. Warp 1
1. Warp 2
5. Cancel

Freeing Resources

You have the following options:

- **0. WARP 1** — Frees the first WARP resource from whatever effect it is being used for and applies it to the new effect.
- **5. Cancel** — Does not free either WARP resource. The new effect is not performed.
If the WARP effect you are trying to apply requires two WARP resources, the following pop-up message displays:

There are not enough channels available to perform a Dual Layer WARP.

You must free resources manually in order to create your dual layer WARP effect.

Freeing WARP resources has different effects depending on what the resource is being used for. If the WARP resource is being used as part of a sequence, the sequence is unloaded when the WARP resource is freed. If the resource is being used as a wipe transition, the transition is switched to a dissolve when the WARP resources is freed.

Once sufficient WARP resources are freed, the new WARP effect is retried unless it is being initiated as a result of one of the following:

- Memory Register Recall
- Key Copy or Swap

In these cases, the action proceeds without the associated WARP effect applied.
WARP Effects

This section describes each WARP effect available for use. Each effect has specific settings which you can modify to change the appearance of the effect. Experiment with different settings to see how they affect the appearance of each WARP effect.

**Important** When working with Squeeze & Tease WARP effects, keep in mind that the parameters are applied based on the whole screen area (as if the image were full screen). If your key is not at full screen, the WARP effect may not appear as expected or desired.

For each WARP presented here:

- Use the *Pattern Buttons* in the *Effects Control Group* to access each menu item.
- Use the *Mattes Color* knobs to adjust WARP parameters

**Film**

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

- **Film** — This parameter selects from a variety of film presets, add noises, and modify the resolution of the effect.
- **Defects** — This parameter adjusts the type and number of defects to the effect.
- **Light** — This parameter adjusts the lighting of the effect.
- **Color** — This parameter adjusts the color of the effect.
- **Sensitivity** — This parameter adjusts the color and luminance of the effect.
**Film Parameters**

**Important** The Film WARP will only be visible, and its parameters adjustable, after selecting a preset with the **Film Presets (HUE)** knob.

The Film parameters are accessed by pressing **5. Film** on the **Film WARP Menu**.

*Film WARP Menu — Film Parameters*

- Use the **HUE** knob to select the effect from the following list of Film Presets:
  - None
  - Old Color
  - Late 1800’s
  - Pale Color
  - 1900’s
  - Oversaturated
  - 1910’s
  - Color Fade
  - 1920’s
  - Amateur
  - Early Color
  - VHS

- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the amount of noise added to the effect.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the resolution the effect.

**Defects Parameters**

The Defects parameters are accessed by pressing **6. Defects** on the **Film WARP Menu**.

*Film WARP Menu — Defects Parameters*

- Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Film Presets: None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noise: 0.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution: 0.0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Warp Key 1**
- **0. Category**
- **Film Presets**
- **Favorites**
- **5. Film**
- **6. Defects**
- **7. Light**
- **8. Color**
- **9. Sensitivity**

- **Defects:**
  - Line Scratch: 0.0%
  - Rand. Scratch: 0.0%
  - Film Jump: 0.0%

- Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify
• Use the **HUE** knob to modify the number of scratch lines in the effect.
• Use the **SAT** knob to modify the number of random scratches in the effect.
• Use the **LUM** knob to modify the number of times the film will jump in the effect.

**Light Parameters**

The Light parameters are accessed by pressing **7. Light** on the **Film WARP Menu**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category</td>
<td>Favorites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Warp List</td>
<td>Film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash: 0.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensity: 0.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius: 0.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify* 

Film WARP Menu — Light Parameters

• Use the **HUE** knob to modify the number of times the effect flashes.
• Use the **SAT** knob to modify the intensity of light on the effect.
• Use the **LUM** knob to modify the radius of the effect.

**Color Parameters**

The Color parameters are accessed by pressing **8. Color** on the **Film WARP Menu**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category</td>
<td>Favorites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Warp List</td>
<td>Film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hue: 0.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturation: 0.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminance: 0.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify* 

Film WARP Menu — Color Parameters

• Use the **HUE** knob to modify the hue of the effect.
• Use the **SAT** knob to modify the saturation of color on the effect.
• Use the **LUM** knob to modify the luminance of the effect.
Sensitivity Parameters

The sensitivity parameters are accessed by pressing 9. Sensitivity on the Film WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the amount of red in the effect.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the amount of blue in the effect.
- Use the LUM knob to modify the luminance contrast in the effect.

Globe

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

- **Rotation** — This parameter adjusts the rotation of the effect along either the X or Y-Axis to create the globe effect.
- **Position** — This parameter adjusts the position of the effect.
- **Movement** — This parameter adjusts the continuous rotation of the effect.
- **Lighting** — This parameter adjusts the lighting of the effect.
- **Light Pos.** — This parameter adjusts the position of the lighting effect.
Rotation Parameters

The Rotation parameters are accessed by pressing 5. Rotation on the Globe WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to rotate the effect along the X-Axis.
- Use the SAT knob to rotate the effect along the Y-Axis.
- Use the LUM knob to create the effect. The Globe effect must be completely created before any of the other parameters will function.

Position Parameters

The Position parameters are accessed by pressing 6. Position on the Globe WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to move the effect along the X-Axis.
- Use the SAT knob to move the effect along the Y-Axis.

Note

The center point of the screen is 50.00%.

- Use the bottom LUM knob to move the effect around the Z-Axis.
Movement Parameters

The Movement parameters are accessed by pressing 7. Movement on the Globe WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to set the rate of continuous rotation around the Y-Axis (horizontal rotation).
- Use the SAT knob to set the rate of continuous rotation around the X-Axis (vertical rotation).

Note

Values of 0.000 mean no continuous rotation is applied.

Lighting Parameters

The Lighting parameters are accessed by pressing 8. Lighting on the Globe WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the brightness and visibility of the lighting highlight. Increasing values produces a brighter highlight.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the shadow effect on the globe. Increasing values cause the areas of the globe not lit by the light source to appear darker.
- Use the LUM knob to select the type of light source:
  ~ None – Use this option to disable the light source. Flat lighting is used.
  ~ Natural – Use this option to apply a soft, natural-looking light source.
  ~ White – Use this option to apply a harsh, white light source.
**Lighting Position Parameters**

The Lighting Position parameters are accessed by pressing **9. Lighting Pos.** on the Globe WARP Menu.

![Lighting Position Parameters Table]

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the size of the gleam effect produced by the simulated light source.
- Use the **SAT** knob to rotate the simulated light source along the Z-Axis.
- Use the **LUM** knob to rotate the simulated light source along the X and Y-Axis.

**Heart**

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

- **Position** — This parameter adjusts the position and size of the effect.
- **Rotation** — This parameter adjusts the rotation of the effect along either the X, Y or Z Axis.
- **Border** — This parameter adjusts the border size.
- **Border Color** — This parameter adjusts the luminance, saturation and hue of the border.
- **Movement** — This parameter adjusts the rotation along the X, Y or Z Axis.

![Heart WARP Menu Table]
Position Parameters

The Position parameters are accessed by pressing 5. Position on the Heart WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to position the center point of the heart along the X-Axis.
- Use the SAT knob to position the center point of the heart along the Y-Axis.
- Use the LUM knob to create and change the size of the heart.

Rotation Parameters

The Rotation parameters are accessed by pressing 6. Rotation on the Heart WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the direction and number of rotations along the X-Axis.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the direction and number of rotations along the Y-Axis.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the direction and number of rotations along the Z-Axis.
Border Parameters

The Border parameters are accessed by pressing 7. Border on the Heart WARP Menu.

- Use the LUM knob to adjust the size of the border.

Border Color Parameters

The Border Color parameters are accessed by pressing 8. Border Color on the Heart WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the hue of the border color.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the saturation of the border color.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the luminance of the border color.
Movement Parameters

The Movement parameters are accessed by pressing 9. Movement on the Heart WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the direction and rate of rotation along the X-Axis.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the direction and rate of rotation along the Y-Axis.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the direction and rate of rotation along the Z-Axis.

Lens Flare

This WARP allows you to add a point light source and a series of lens flare effects to the video. The following parameters can be adjusted:

- **Position** — This parameter adjusts the size and position of the light source and flares.
- **Lighting** — This parameter adjusts washout lighting color, brightness and amount of glare of the light source.
- **Placement** — This parameter adjusts the placement of the lens flares.
- **Color** — This parameter adjusts the luminance, saturation and hue levels.
- **Flare Options** — This parameter adjusts the number of lens flares and to select a lighting source type.
Position Parameters

The Lighting parameters are accessed by pressing 6. Lighting on the Lens Flare WARP Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category Favorites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Warp List</td>
<td>Lens Flare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Position</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Lighting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Placement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Color</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Flare Options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Position:
- Use the HUE knob to adjust the position of the light source along the X-Axis.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the position of the light source along the Y-Axis.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the size of the flares.

Lighting Parameters

The Lighting parameters are accessed by pressing 6. Lighting on the Lens Flare WARP Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category Favorites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Warp List</td>
<td>Lens Flare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Position</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Lighting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Placement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Color</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Flare Options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lighting:
- Use the HUE knob to select the color of the washout lighting.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the brightness of the light source, flares, and washout lighting.
Placement Parameters

The Lighting parameters are accessed by pressing 6. Lighting on the Lens Flare WARP Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category</td>
<td>Favorites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Warp List</td>
<td>Lens Flare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placement:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-follow: On</td>
<td>Angle: 100.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance: 100.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lens Flare WARP Menu — Placement Parameters

- Use the HUE knob to enable the flare to follow the key or not (On or Off).
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the angle of the light source.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the distance of the light source.

Color Parameters

The Color parameters are accessed by pressing 8. Color on the Lens Flare WARP Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category</td>
<td>Favorites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Warp List</td>
<td>Lens Flare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hue: 52.0%</td>
<td>Saturation: 75.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminance: 75.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lens Flare WARP Menu — Color Parameters

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the hue.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the saturation.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the luminance.
**Flare Options Parameters**

The Flare Options parameters are accessed by pressing 9. Flare Options on the Lens Flare WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the aspect ratio of the effect.
- Use the SAT knob to select the lighting source type.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the number of lens flares from 0 to 4.

**Melt**

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

- **Melt** — This parameter adjusts the direction and amplitude of the melt.
- **Modulation** — This parameter adjusts the size and number of waves in the melt.
- **Curve** — This parameter adjusts the amount of curve in the melt.
**Melt Parameters**

The Melt parameters are accessed by pressing 5. Melt on the Melt WARP Menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category</td>
<td>Favorites 5. Melt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melt:</td>
<td>7. Curve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

- Use the HUE knob to select the type of melt: Block Expands, Block Shrinks, Hole Expands, or Hole Shrinks.
- Use the SAT knob to indicate the direction of the melt: Up, Down, Right, or Left.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the height of the individual waves in the melt effect.

**Modulation Parameters**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category</td>
<td>Favorites 5. Melt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modulation:</td>
<td>7. Curve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the number of melting waves in the effect.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the size of the melting waves.
- Use the LUM knob to shrink or expand the video, based on the type of melt you have selected.
**Curve Parameters**

The Curve parameters are accessed by pressing 7. Curve on the Melt WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the angle of the curve.
- Use the SAT knob to move the wave across the image.

**Operating Tip**

You can use this parameter to apply a tilt effect.

**Obscure**

This WARP allows you to obscure a section of video using a mosaic pattern. The following parameters can be adjusted:

- **Pixelation** — This parameter adjusts the size of the mosaic tiles.
- **Position** — This parameter adjusts the position of the obscured video.
- **Shape** — This parameter adjusts the shape of the mosaic tile.
- **Effects** — This parameter adjusts the lighting effects.
**Pixelation Parameters**

The Pixelation parameters are accessed by pressing **5. Pixelation** on the Obscure WARP Menu.

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the tiles along the X-Axis.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the tiles along the Y-Axis.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust overall tiles.

**Position Parameters**

The Position parameters are accessed by pressing **6. Position** on the Obscure WARP Menu.

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the position of the video along the X-Axis.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the position of the video alone the Y-Axis.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the size of the effect.
Shape Parameters

The Shape parameters are accessed by pressing **7. Shape** on the Obscure **WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the aspect ratio of the effect.
- Use the **SAT** knob to select an ellipse or rectangle shape.

Effects Parameters

The Effects parameters are accessed by pressing **8. Effects** on the Obscure **WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to change the background between **Hide** and **Show**.
- Use the **SAT** knob to toggle the lighting on or off.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the angle (in degrees) of the lighting for the effect.
This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted.

- **Position** — This parameter adjusts the fold of the page turn.
- **Light** — This parameter adjusts the on-board lighting.

### Operating Tip

The Page Roll WARP can be used in wipes or other effects.

### Important

When working with Page Roll, keep in mind that the parameters are applied based on the whole screen area (as if the image were full screen). This means that if you change the page turn parameters, then move the image along the Z-Axis (so it appears smaller) you will not see any part of the effect that is happening where there is no key video.

### Position Parameters

The Position parameters are accessed by pressing **5. Position** on the Page Roll WARP Menu.

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the roll of the page turn on the image.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the radius of the fold. This indicates whether the fold is wide or narrow.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the angle or axis of the fold. This specifies the corner at which the fold begins.
**Light Parameters**

The Light parameters are accessed by pressing 6. **Light** on the **Page Roll WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the intensity of the light that appears on the curve at the top of the fold.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the amount of shadow on top and underneath the fold’s curve.
- Use the **LUM** knob to select the type of light you want to use.
  - **Natural** — Select this option to select a light that brightens the area.
  - **White** — Select this option to blend the area of the image with white light.

**Pixie Dust**

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

- **Position** — This parameter adjusts the area on the image where the effect appears.
- **Shape** — This parameter adjusts the shape of the area where the effect appears (rectangle or oval).
- **Randomness** — This parameter adjusts the amount of random particle distribution in the effect.
**Position Parameters**

The Position parameters are accessed by pressing **5. Position** on the Pixie Dust WARP Menu.

![Pixie Dust WARP Menu — Position Parameters](image)

- Use the HUE knob to define the horizontal position of the effect on the image.
- Use the SAT knob to define the vertical position of the effect on the image.
- Use the LUM knob to define the size of the effect.

**Shape Parameters**

The Shape parameters are accessed by pressing **6. Shape** on the Pixie Dust WARP Menu.

![Pixie Dust WARP Menu — Shape Parameters](image)

- Use the HUE knob to change the aspect ratio of the area where the effect appears.
- Use the LUM knob to select the shape of the effect.
Randomness Parameters

The Randomness parameters are accessed by pressing 7. Randomness on the Pixie Dust WARP Menu.

Pixie Dust WARP Menu — Randomness Parameters

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the amount of variation in the random distribution of particles in the effect. The greater the variation, the fuzzier the image appears.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the amount of softening around the edges of the effect.
- Use the LUM knob to adjust the movement of particles.
  - Fixed — Adjust the amount of randomness defined using the Variation parameter.
  - Animate — Adjusts the random distribution of particles in the effect.

Ripple

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

- Wave — This parameter adjusts the amplitude and frequency of the ripples.
- Position — This parameter adjusts the position of the ripple effect.
- Lighting — This parameter adjusts the lighting on the effect.
- Movement — This parameter adjusts the type of movement you want in the effect.
Wave Parameters

The Wave parameters are accessed by pressing 5. Wave on the Ripple WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the perceived height of the waves.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the width of the waves.

Position Parameters

The Position parameters are accessed by pressing 6. Position on the Ripple WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the horizontal position of the ripple.
- Use the SAT knob to adjust the vertical position of the ripple.
Lighting Parameters

The Lighting parameters are accessed by pressing 7. Lighting on the Ripple WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to adjust the intensity of light on the wave of the ripple.

Movement Parameters

The Movement parameters are accessed by pressing 8. Movement on the Ripple WARP Menu.

- Use the HUE knob to create continuous wave motion.
- Use the SAT knob to create a water drop effect.

Sand

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

- Sand — This parameter adjusts the amount and direction of the sand effect.
- Wind — This parameter adjusts the amount and direction of the wind.
- Edge Peaks — This parameter adjusts the edge peaks of the effect.
- Edge Curve — This parameter adjusts the edge curve of the effect.
**Sand Parameters**

The Sand parameters are accessed by pressing **5. Sand** on the Sand WARP Menu.

- Use the **HUE** knob to select the direction of the blowing sand.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the opacity of the grains of sand.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the amount of displacement in the effect.

**Wind Parameters**

The Wind parameters are accessed by pressing **6. Wind** on the Sand WARP Menu.

- **Wind:** Oscillation: 300
  Velocity: 25
  Direction: 35

Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify
• Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the amount of oscillation in the blowing sand.
• Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the velocity or wind speed.
• Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the direction of the wind.

**Edge Peaks**

The Edge Peaks parameters are accessed by pressing **7. Edge Peaks** on the Sand WARP Menu.

![Sand WARP Menu — Edge Peaks](image)

• Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the frequency or number of peaks at the edges of the effect.
• Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the size of the waves at the edges of the effect.

**Edge Curves**

The Edge Curves parameters are accessed by pressing **8. Edge Curves** on the Sand WARP Menu.

![Sand WARP Menu — Edge Curves](image)

• Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the slope of the waves at the edge of the effect.
• Use the **SAT** knob to move the edges of the waves across the image.

**Split**

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

• **Movement** — This parameter adjusts direction and size of the split.
• **Axis** — This parameter adjusts the position and angle of the split.
**Movement Parameters**

The Movement parameters are accessed by pressing **5. Movement** on the **Split WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to select the direction of the split.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the size of the split.

**Axis Parameters**

The Axis parameters are accessed by pressing **6. Axis** on the **Split WARP Menu**.

- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the position of the split on the image.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the angle of the split.
Star

This WARP has the following parameters that can be adjusted:

- **Position** — This parameter adjusts the position and size of the effect.
- **Rotation** — This parameter adjusts the rotation of the effect along either the X, Y or Z-Axis.
- **Shape** — This parameter adjusts the number and size of points to the star and the border size.
- **Border Color** — This parameter adjusts the luminance, saturation and hue of the border.
- **Movement** — This parameter adjusts the rotation of the effect along the X, Y or Z-Axis.

### Position Parameters

The Position parameters are accessed by pressing **5. Position** on the **Star WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to position the center point of the star along the X-Axis.
- Use the **SAT** knob to position the center point of the star along the Y-Axis.
- Use the **LUM** knob to change the size of the star.
**Rotation Parameters**

The Rotation parameters are accessed by pressing **6. Rotation** on the **Star WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the direction and number of rotations along the X-Axis.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the direction and number of rotations along the Y-Axis.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the direction and number of rotations along the Z-Axis.

**Shape Parameters**

The Shape parameters are accessed by pressing **7. Shape** on the **Star WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to modify the number of points in the star.
- Use the **SAT** knob to modify the point size.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the size of the border.
**Border Color Parameters**

The Border Color parameters are accessed by pressing 8. **Border Color** on the **Star WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the hue of the border color.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the saturation of the border color.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the luminance of the border color.

**Movement Parameters**

The Movement parameters are accessed by pressing 9. **Movement** on the **Star WARP Menu**.

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the direction and rate of rotation along the X-Axis.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the direction and rate of rotation along the Y-Axis.
- Use the **LUM** knob to adjust the direction and rate of rotation along the Z-Axis.
Stretch

This WARP has the following parameter that can be adjusted:

- **Aspect** — This parameter adjusts the aspect of the effect along the X or Y Axis.

`Active Warp:    Stretch`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category</td>
<td>Favorites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Warp List</td>
<td>Stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Aspect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WARP Menu — Stretch

**Aspect Parameters**

The Aspect parameters are accessed by pressing 5. **Aspect** on the Stretch WARP Menu.

`Use positioner or Hue, Sat, Lum to modify`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warp</th>
<th>Key 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. Category</td>
<td>Favorites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Warp List</td>
<td>Stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Aspect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Aspect:

- X-Aspect: 1.00
- Y-Aspect: 1.00

Stretch WARP Menu — Aspect Parameters

- Use the **HUE** knob to adjust the aspect of the effect along the X-Axis.
- Use the **SAT** knob to adjust the aspect of the effect along the Y-Axis.
Appendix A. Menu Trees

In This Appendix

This appendix lists the various menu trees that are used to set up the configurable areas of your Synergy 100 MD switcher.

Note

Asterisks (*) in the Synergy 100 MD menu trees denote levels of association. For example, all items marked with two asterisks (**) are grouped together, all items marked with three asterisks (***) are grouped together, and so on.

The following topics are discussed:

- Effects Menu Tree
- Options Menu Tree
- BNC Configuration Menu Tree
- Output BNC Configuration Menu Tree
- Personality Menu Tree
- GPI Setup Menu Tree
- Editor Communication Menu Tree
- Audio Communication Menu Tree
- Serial Tally Communication Menu Tree
- Disk Menu Tree
- Global-Store Menu Tree
- Squeeze & Tease MD Menu Tree
- Help Menu Tree
The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu that is used identify hardware options and software options that are installed on the switcher, as well as access the menus for the UltraChrome™ and Squeeze & Tease MD™ features.
Options Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu that is used to set up the network communication with the switcher and add software options.
BNC Configuration Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used to configure your BNC inputs.
Output BNC Configuration Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used to configure your BNC outputs.
Personality Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for additional installation setup procedures.
GPI Setup Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for GPI setup procedures.
Editor Communication Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for setting up communication with external editors.
Audio Communication Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for setting up communication with audio mixers.
Serial Tally Communication Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for setting up serial tally communication parameters.
Disk Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for storing and recalling your switcher installation setup, memories, personality, and 3D wipes to and from a storage device.
Global-Store Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for setting up using your three Global-Stores.
Squeeze & Tease MD Menu Tree

The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used for configuring your Squeeze & Tease MD option.
The following figure illustrates the portion of the menu tree that is used to access the Help feature of your Synergy 100 MD switcher.

You can only copy key 1 onto key 2, except matte fill color. Set up KEY 1, then press and hold the key type button of KEY 1. Press KEY 2 Effects Keyers group and release both buttons.
Appendix B. Synergy Effects

In This Appendix

This appendix briefly describes the pre-programmed Squeeze & Tease Wipes and sequences that are supplied on the Product Resources CD.
Squeeze & Tease MD Wipes and Sequences

After the Squeeze & Tease Wipes and Sequences have been loaded, you can replace or delete them as required. The following chart describes the provided wipes and sequences.

Important

The following descriptions refer to background wipes as PGM transitions to PST when used as a Normal transition.

Squeeze & Tease Wipes and Sequences Chart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>PushLt</td>
<td>Push left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>PushRt</td>
<td>Push right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>PushUp</td>
<td>Push up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>PushDn</td>
<td>Push down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>PushUpLt</td>
<td>Push to upper left corner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05</td>
<td>PushUpRt</td>
<td>Push to upper right corner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06</td>
<td>PushDnLt</td>
<td>Push to lower left corner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
<td>PushDnRt</td>
<td>Push to lower right corner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08</td>
<td>RotateX</td>
<td>Rotate in X to a knife edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09</td>
<td>RotateY</td>
<td>Rotate in Y to a knife edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>SwingRt</td>
<td>Pivot point on right edge, rotate in X to the right and back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>SwingLt</td>
<td>Pivot point on left edge, rotate in X to the left and back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>SwingUp</td>
<td>Pivot point on top edge, rotate in Y up and back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>SwingDwn</td>
<td>Pivot point on bottom edge, rotate in Y down and back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>SwngUpLt</td>
<td>Pivot point on top edge, rotate up and then left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SwngUpRt</td>
<td>Pivot point on top edge, rotate up and then right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>SwngDnLt</td>
<td>Pivot point on top edge, rotate down and then left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>SwngDnRt</td>
<td>Pivot point on top edge, rotate down and then right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>RotXBack</td>
<td>Push away while rotating in X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>RotYBack</td>
<td>Push away while rotating in Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>DiveRt</td>
<td>Rotate back and right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>DiveLt</td>
<td>Rotate back and left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>DiveUp</td>
<td>Rotate back and up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>DiveDn</td>
<td>Rotate back and down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>WalkDown</td>
<td>Move back, then walk the video down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>WalkUp</td>
<td>Move back, then walk the video up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>AspectX</td>
<td>Compress horizontally to knife edge and back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>AspectY</td>
<td>Compress vertically to knife edge and back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Squeeze & Tease Wipes and Sequences Chart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>ZoomOut</td>
<td>Push towards then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>ZoomIn</td>
<td>Push away then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>DfocusRt</td>
<td>Defocus then push right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>DfocusLt</td>
<td>Defocus then push left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>MosaicLt</td>
<td>Mosaic tiles then push left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>MosaicRt</td>
<td>Mosaic tiles then push right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>TwirlLt</td>
<td>Twirl around Y and push left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>TwirlRgt</td>
<td>Twirl around Y and push right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>KnifEdge</td>
<td>Twirl to knife edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Tornado</td>
<td>Video gets stuck in a tornado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>SpinOut</td>
<td>Spin and push towards then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>SpinIn</td>
<td>Spin and push away then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>TopLtUp</td>
<td>Pivot point top left corner, rotate and push up then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>TopLtDn</td>
<td>Pivot point top left corner, rotate and push down then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>TopRtUp</td>
<td>Pivot point top right corner, rotate and push up then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>TopRtDn</td>
<td>Pivot point top right corner, rotate and push down then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>BtmLtUp</td>
<td>Pivot point bottom left corner, rotate and push up then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>BtmLtDn</td>
<td>Pivot point bottom left corner, rotate and push down then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>BtmRtUp</td>
<td>Pivot point bottom right corner, rotate and push up then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>BtmRtDn</td>
<td>Pivot point bottom right corner, rotate and push down then back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>10000lbs</td>
<td>Video falls, then bounces (when run in reverse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>NailFall</td>
<td>Video swings on nail point, then falls to ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>SpinLtUp</td>
<td>Pivot on left center then up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>SpinLtDn</td>
<td>Pivot on left center then down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>SpinRtUp</td>
<td>Pivot on right center then up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>SpinRtDn</td>
<td>Pivot on right center then down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>SpinUpLt</td>
<td>Pivot on top then left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>SpinUpRt</td>
<td>Pivot on top then right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>SpinDnLt</td>
<td>Pivot on bottom then left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>SpinDnRt</td>
<td>Pivot on bottom then right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Sepia Spn</td>
<td>Move away to 3/4 size, change color to sepia, then rotate in X to a knife edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Photo</td>
<td>Move away to 3/4 size, light flash, followed by a lighting effect with blur, defocus and sepia while rotating in Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix C. Hotkeys

In This Appendix

This appendix provides information on the Hotkeys available for accessing the main Squeeze & Tease menus and functions.

The following topics are discussed in this appendix:

- Overview
- Using Hotkeys
- Hotkey Functions
Overview

The primary Squeeze & Tease menus can be accessed directly using a system of hotkeys (shortcut keys) on the Synergy 100 control panel.

Hotkey Labels

Hotkeys are indicated by the labels below the crosspoint buttons on the Key, PGM, and PST buses. Refer to the section “Basic Switcher Functions” on page 4–8 for general button rules.

Squeeze & Tease Hotkeys
Using Hotkeys

Hotkeys are activated by pressing and holding the middle SEL button and then pressing the crosspoint button corresponding to the hotkey you want to activate. The Hotkey functionality is only available for Flying Keys.

Using Hotkeys

Use the following procedure to use a hotkey on the Synergy 100 control panel:

1. Ensure that you are flying a key.

2. Press and hold the middle SEL button, in the Mattes section of the Menu Control Group.

   ![Synergy 100 Control Panel — Middle SEL Button](image)

   You can latch the middle SEL in hotkey mode by double-pressing it. Double-pressing it again will take it out of hotkey mode.

3. Press the crosspoint button that corresponds to the hotkey you want to activate. Refer to the section “Hotkey Functions” on page 22–4 for a list of the available hotkey functions on the Synergy 100 control panel.

4. Release the middle SEL button. Once you have activated the hotkey, you no longer need to hold down the SEL button.

5. Edit the channel as needed and exit the menu as you would normally.

This completes the procedure for activating a hotkey.
Hotkey Functions

The following tables list the Squeeze & Tease functions accessible using hotkey combinations on the Synergy 100 control panel.

Channel Selection Hotkeys

This table describes the hotkey functions used when selecting channels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Hotkey Location</th>
<th>Hotkey</th>
<th>Crosspoint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Channel 1 in the active Keyer</td>
<td>KEY Bus</td>
<td>CH1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select Channel 2 in the active Keyer</td>
<td>KEY Bus</td>
<td>CH2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select both channels in the active Keyer</td>
<td>KEY Bus</td>
<td>CH1+2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Menu Hotkeys

The following table lists the hotkeys available for displaying the Squeeze & Tease MD main menus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Hotkey Location</th>
<th>Hotkey</th>
<th>Crosspoint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global-Store Menu</td>
<td>PST Bus</td>
<td>STILLS</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting Menu</td>
<td>PST Bus</td>
<td>LIGHT</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position/Crop Menu</td>
<td>PST Bus</td>
<td>POSN</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preprocessor Menu</td>
<td>PST Bus</td>
<td>PREPROC</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation Menu</td>
<td>PST Bus</td>
<td>BORDER</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence Main Menu</td>
<td>PST Bus</td>
<td>SEQ</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warp Menu</td>
<td>PST Bus</td>
<td>WARP</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Sequences Hotkeys

The following table lists the hotkeys available when working with sequences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Hotkey Location</th>
<th>Hotkey</th>
<th>Crosspoint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete Keyframe</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>DEL KF</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Sequence Menu</td>
<td>PST Bus</td>
<td>SEQ</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to End of Sequence</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>ToEND</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to Start of Sequence</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>ToSTART</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insert Keyframe</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>INS KF</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyframe Duration</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>KF DUR</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Sequence</td>
<td>KEY Bus</td>
<td>LOADSEQ</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Sequence</td>
<td>KEY Bus</td>
<td>NEWSEQ</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Keyframe</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>NEXT KF</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overwrite Keyframe</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>OVR KF</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous Keyframe</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>PREV KF</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run Sequence Forward</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>RUN FWD</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run Sequence in Reverse</td>
<td>PGM Bus</td>
<td>RUN REV</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Sequence</td>
<td>KEY Bus</td>
<td>SAVESEQ</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Glossary of Terms

**Active Video Lines** — All video lines not occurring in the vertical blanking interval; the portion of the video signal that contains picture information.

**Aspect Ratio** — The numerical ratio of picture width to height, for example, 4:3 or 16:9.

**Auto Transition** — An automatic transition in which the manual movement of the fader handle is simulated electronically. The transition starts when the AUTO TRANS button is pressed and takes place over a pre-selected time period measured in frames.

**Border** — Effects created around the edges of a pattern or on a keyer. If an optional dual border generator card is installed, several border, shadow, and outline effects are available on that keyer as well.

**Border Generator** — Circuitry which generates various border effects on keys created by the switcher.

**Chroma Key** — An effect in which video from one source replaces video of a specific hue in a second video source. The blue and green hues are most commonly used for chroma keying.

**Chrominance** — The “depth” or saturation of a color. The three characteristics of a TV color signal are chrominance, luminance, and hue.

**Cut** — An instantaneous switch from one video signal to another.

**Dissolve** — A transition from one video signal to another in which one signal is faded down while the other is simultaneously faded up. The term “mix” is often used interchangeably with “dissolve”.

**Downstream Keyer (DSK)** — A keyer that places a key “downstream” of the MLE effects system output. This “top level” effect usually consists of a character generator title.

**External Key** — A video input (non-primary video) used to produce a key effect. Examples of external key sources are character generators and cameras.

**Fade to Black** — A controlled change of the on-air picture signal level down to black level.

**Field** — One half of a complete picture (or frame) interval containing all of the odd, or all of the even lines in interlaced scanning. One scan of a TV screen is called a “field”; two fields are required to make a complete picture (which is a “frame”).

**Field Frequency** — The rate at which one complete field is scanned, approximately 50 times per second in 625 video or 60 times per second in 525 video.

**Frame** — One complete picture consisting of two fields of interlaced scanning lines.

**GPI** — An abbreviation for General Purpose Interface, a device which typically allows remote control of the switcher’s automatic transition functions.
**Hue** — The characteristic of a color signal that determines whether the color is red, yellow, green, blue, purple, etc. (the three characteristics of a TV color signal are chrominance, luminance, and hue). White, black, and gray are not considered hues.

**Internal Key** — The use of a primary input to produce a key effect.

**Key** — An effect produced by “cutting a hole” in background video, then filling the hole with video or matte from another source. Key source video cuts the hole, key fill video fills the hole. The video signal used for cut and fill can come from the same or separate sources.

**Key Fill** — A video input which is timed to “fill the hole” provided by the key source video. An example of key fill is the video output of a character generator.

**Key Invert** — An effect which reverses the polarity of the key source so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key source instead of bright areas. The KEY INVERT button selects this effect.

**Key Mask** — A keying technique in which a pattern is combined with the key source to block out unwanted portions of the key source.

**Key Source** — The video signal which “cuts a hole” in the background video to make a key effect possible. Also called “Key Video”. In practice, this signal controls when a video mixer circuit will switch from background to key fill video.

**Key Video** — See Key Source.

**Linear Keys** — Linear keys make it possible to fully specify the transparency of a key from opaque, through transparent, to fully off. The transparency is specified by the key signal (also known as the “hole cutter” or “alpha channel”) that is associated with the key fill. A keyer capable of a linear key converts the key signal voltage directly to the transparency effect on the screen.

**Line Frequency** — The number of horizontal scans per second. For 525 line 60 Hz systems, this is approximately 15734 scans per second.

**Luminance Key** — An effect in which video from one source is replaced by video that exceeds a set level in a second video source.

**Mask** — See Key Mask.

**Matte** — A solid color signal which is generated by the switcher and can be adjusted for hue, saturation, and luminance levels.

**Matte Key** — A key effect in which the fill video is matte, provided by one of the switcher’s matte generators.

**Memory** — The memory feature provides storage and recall of complete switcher setups.

**MIX** — See Dissolve.

**MLE** — An abbreviation for multi-level effects.

**PGM Output** — The on-air video output of the system.

**Primary Input** — Video sources selected by the control panel push-buttons for the crosspoint buses. These buses are normally labeled “KEY”, “PGM”, and “PST”.

**PV Output** — A switcher output which shows the scene that will go on-air when the next automatic or manual transition takes place.

**Self Key** — A key effect in which the same video signal serves as both the key signal and key fill.
**Soft Edge** — A pattern edge effect produced by mixing key source and key fill signals in such a way that the edge of the pattern is not sharp.

**Split Screen** — An effect in which a wipe pattern provides the key source signal. This is known as a “preset pattern” key.

**Tally** — An indicator that illuminates when the associated push-button or control is selected or is on-air.

**Termination** — A means of closing a circuit by connecting a resistive load to it. In video systems, a termination is typically a 75 ohm resistive load.

**Transition** — A controlled change from one video input to another video input or black. The change can occur through a wipe, cut, dissolve or “DVE Send” effect.

**Transition Preview** — A transition seen only on the preview monitor. It may be observed and adjusted without disturbing the program or “on-air” output.

**Video** — The electrical signal produced by a television camera, character generator or other image source. The signal amplitude varies in relation to the tonal scale from black to white presented at the source. White produces the highest amplitude; black produces the lowest signal amplitude.

**Wipe** — A transition from one video signal to another, in which the change proceeds according to the shape of a specific pattern. A moving transition line separates the two picture signals.
Index

Numerics

1 button ....................................... 2-3, 5-9, 6-8, 17-24
10 button ..................................... 2-3, 5-9, 6-8, 17-24
100 button ................................... 2-3, 5-9, 6-8, 17-24
3D Space
   channel location.............................. 12-3
   channel rotation............................. 12-7
   control options.............................. 12-8
   motion parallax.............................. 12-5
   perspective.................................... 12-5
   position coordinates....................... 12-3
   raster and channel location.............. 12-4
   Squeeze & Tease MD basics.............. 12-3

A

Abbreviations ......................................................... 1-6
Active Keyer ...................................................... 12-19
Active video lines................................. GL-1
A-D, definition.............................................. 1-6
Additional Installation Menu tree........... 20-6
Adjusting
   aspect ratio........................................ 13-8
   channel position............................. 13-3
   cropping, horizontal........................ 13-9
   cropping, vertical........................... 13-10
   freeze ............................................. 13-12
   image position ................................ 16-1
   pattern aspect ratio ......................... 6-5
   pattern softness................................ 6-5
   picture frame border size................. 15-3
   picture frame border softness........... 15-4
   picture frame border symmetry........... 15-5
   picture frame border transparency...... 15-6
   rotation .......................................... 13-7
   transparency .................................... 13-11
   wipe ............................................. 6-5
Advanced mode................................. 7-13
Advanced Picture Frame Borders .............. 15-2
Advanced Positioning
   layering.......................................... 12-23
   locate .......................................... 14-5
   spin ............................................. 14-3
   viewpoint ....................................... 14-4
Advanced Recall .................................. 9-5, 9-6
Advanced Store .................................. 9-3, 9-4
Ambient light ........................................ 18-1
Aspect
   adjusting........................................ 13-8
   button............................................. 3-2
   knob.............................................. 6-5
   ratio............................................. 6-5
   ratio, definition.............................. GL-1
   scroll knob.................................... 3-2
ASPECT button.......................................... 6-5
Assign Group, Remote Aux Panels........... 10-5
Assign Key............................................ 7-5
Assign Key............................................ 7-5
Assignable Remote Aux Panels, using....... 10-5
Assigning channels ......................... 12-20
Audio Mixer Interface option............... 1-19
Auto Flip ............................................. 12-25
Auto Recall .......................................... 4-5
Auto Select Key
   button............................................. 7-3, 7-5
   performing...................................... 7-10
AUTO TRANS button
   location.......................................... 2-4
   memory recalls............................... 9-6
   overview........................................ 5-3
   rules............................................. 5-8
   using with keys.............................. 7-41
Auto Transition
   definition...................................... GL-1
   notes............................................. 7-41
   rate group..................................... 2-3
   rates, changing.............................. 5-9
   rules............................................. 5-8, 7-41
   set rates...................................... 5-9
AUX ...................................................... 1-6
Aux Bus
   assign group.................................. 10-5
   using............................................ 10-3
Aux Panels, see also Remote Aux Panels
B

Back (100) button .................................................. 3-3

Background
  cuts ...................................................... 5-10
  dissolves ........................................... 5-11
  menu ................................................. 3-4
  transitions .......................................... 5-1
  wipes .................................................. 6-6

Background range, UltraChrome ... 7-17, 7-25

Backside video ............................................. 12-24
  Auto Flip ........................................... 12-25
  using with sequences.......................... 12-25
  using with wipes .................................. 12-26

Basic Effects Dissolve, creating ............ 9-9

Basic mode .................................................. 7-13

Basics
  crosspoints ......................................... 4-8
  function buttons .................................. 4-8
  shift buttons ....................................... 4-8
  switcher ............................................. 4-8

BKGD ................................................................ 2-2
  button ............................................... 5-4
  definition .......................................... 1-6
  Program Bus ........................................ 2-2

BNC configuration menu tree .............. 20-4

BORD button................................................ 2-3, 7-7

Border
  Advanced Picture Frame ................. 15-2
  color ................................................. 15-12
  definition ........................................... GL-1
  generator .......................................... GL-1
  key .................................................... 7-7
  working with multiple channels .... 15-12

BORDER knob ............................................. 6-5

Borders and matte adjustment, Squeeze & Tease 6-12

Borders and matte adjustment, Warp ....... 6-12

Bus
  Key ................................................... 2-3, 4-10
  Preset ............................................... 2-2
  Program Background ............................ 2-2

Button
  1 .................................................... 6-8
  10 .................................................. 6-8
  100 ................................................ 6-8
  ASPECT ........................................... 3-2, 6-5
  AUTO TRANS .................................... 5-3, 9-6

BACK (100) ................................................. 3-3

CHAR GEN1 .............................................. 7-6

CHAR GEN2 .............................................. 7-6

Chroma key .............................................. 7-3

CNTR/EFF D ........................................... 6-4, 9-2

CUT ....................................................... 5-3

DISS...................................................... 5-3

Down Arrow (10) ................................... 3-3

DSK CUT .............................................. 5-3

DSK DISS .............................................. 5-3

DSK PV .................................................. 7-7

DVE ...................................................... 5-4

Fade to Black ........................................... 2-4, 4-13, 5-3

FLY KEY ................................................ 7-4

KEY INVERT ........................................... 7-4, 7-6

KEY MASK .............................................. 7-4

KEY MEM .............................................. 7-6

KEY2 ..................................................... 7-5

MASK .................................................... 7-6

MATTE FILL ........................................... 7-4, 7-7

MEM ...................................................... 9-2

MENU ................................................... 3-2

Next Transition ....................................... 5-5

OUTL .................................................... 7-7

PST BLACK .............................................. 5-3

REV/LEARN ........................................... 6-4, 7-7, 9-2

ROTATE ................................................ 6-5

SEL ..................................................... 6-2, 6-11

SEL, right ............................................. 3-3

SHDW .................................................... 7-7

TRANS LIMIT ......................................... 5-2

Up Arrow (1) ......................................... 3-3

WIPE ..................................................... 5-4

Buttons
  latching ............................................. 4-8
  momentary ......................................... 4-8

C

Cable, control panel ......................... 1-15

Catalog, Ross Video ............................... 1-16

CD-ROM, Wipes and Sequences ........... 21-2

Center Cross Hairs ............................... 1-12

Center Overlay ...................................... 10-7

Centering a channel ......................... 12-8

CG, definition ....................................... 1-6

Changing auto transition rates ............. 5-9
Channel .................................................. 12-2, 12-19
aspect ratio ........................................... 13-8
assigning ............................................... 12-20
border size ........................................... 15-3
border softness ..................................... 15-4
border symmetry ................................... 15-5
border transparency ................................ 15-6
centering .............................................. 12-8
cropping, horizontal ................................ 13-9
cropping, vertical ................................... 13-10
defreeze ............................................... 13-12
Global-Store ........................................ 11-10, 11-12
listing .................................................. 12-18
location ................................................ 12-3
overview .............................................. 12-18
pivot location ...................................... 13-5
position ............................................... 13-3
rotation .............................................. 12-7, 13-7
status .................................................. 12-18
transparency ...................................... 13-11
utility .................................................. 12-19
Channel processing order, S&T ............. 12-27
CHAR GEN, programming ....................... 7-40
CHAR GEN1 button .................................. 2-3, 7-6
CHAR GEN2 button .................................. 2-3, 7-6
Chart, feature comparison ....................... 1-22
Chroma Key ......................................... 7-13
additional tips and considerations ........... 7-31
choosing a mode ................................... 7-13
color map ........................................... 7-15, 7-22
creating, advanced mode ............ 7-20
creating, basic mode ............................... 7-14
definition ........................................ GL-1
lighting the background .............. 7-30
lighting the foreground ................ 7-31
lighting tips ...................................... 7-30
shadow .............................................. 7-23
CHROMA KEY button ...................... 7-3
Chrominance ................................ GL-1
Classic Wipes .................................. 6-8
Clean Feed, see FlexiClean
CLIP knob ........................................... 2-3, 7-4, 7-7
Clip, adjusting ................................... 7-9
CNTR/EFF D button .............................. 6-4, 9-2
COLOR BKGD 2 .................................. 6-11
Color knobs, matte ......................... 6-10

Color Map
adjusting a Chroma Key ......................... 7-29
UltraChrome ........................................ 7-15, 7-22
Color Pick, UltraChrome ....................... 7-14, 7-21
Colorize effect ..................................... 16-6
Communication Menu tree
audio setup ...................................... 20-9
editor setup ...................................... 20-8
serial tally setup ................................ 20-10
Control options .................................. 12-8
Control Panel
cable ............................................... 1-15
custom cable ..................................... 1-20
features ........................................... 1-12
reference description ....................... 1-5
remote aux panel positioning ........... 1-19
sections ........................................... 2-2
standard ........................................ 1-10
Controls, memory ................................ 9-2
Conventions, documentation ............... 1-4
Conversion Frames .............................. 1-16
ADC-8032B ........................................ 1-16
ADC-8032B-S ..................................... 1-16
ADC-8033 ........................................... 1-16
ADC-8035 ........................................... 1-16
CMA-8011A ....................................... 1-16
CMA-8011A-7 ...................................... 1-16
DAC-8013 ........................................... 1-16
DAC-8016A ........................................ 1-16
DAC-8016A-S ...................................... 1-16
DAC-8016A-SX .................................. 1-16
DAC-8016A-X ...................................... 1-16
QMA-8044 ........................................... 1-16
UMA-8017 ........................................... 1-16
Copy
functions ........................................... 10-10
Key .................................................. 10-10
Cropping
horizontal ......................................... 13-9
vertical ........................................... 13-10
Cross Hairs, center ......................... 10-7
Crosspoint Buttons
on air indicators .............................. 4-11
overview ........................................ 4-8
Custom Cable, control panel ............ 1-20
Cut
definition ........................................ GL-1
procedure ........................................ 5-10
soft ....................................................... 5-12
switch PGM inputs ............................... 5-10
transition ........................................... 5-10
with fader off limit ............................. 7-41
CUT button .......................................... 5-3

D

D-A, definition .................................... 1-6
DA, definition ..................................... 1-6
DDR.................................................. 1-6
Default color background ................. 6-11
Defocus effect .................................... 16-3
Deleting sequences ............................ 17-22
Digital system .................................... 1-8
Directional light ................................. 18-1, 18-3
Directory, creating in Global-Store .... 11-13
Disk
functions ....................................... 9-1
menu tree ........................................ 9-12
recalling registers ......................... 9-15
saving registers ................................ 9-13
storing specific sequence ............. 17-34
Display
indicators ...................................... 1-15
menu system ..................................... 3-2
DISS button ....................................... 5-3
Dissolve
definition ...................................... GL-1
procedure ...................................... 5-11
transition ........................................ 5-11
Documentation
conventions ..................................... 1-4
terms ............................................... 1-5
Down Arrow (10) button ..................... 3-3
Downstream Keyer ............................ GL-1
Downstream Keyer 1 and 2 ............... 7-35
Downstream Keyer Drop ................... 4-3, 7-37
Downstream Keyer Group ................. 2-3, 7-5
Drop, DSK ........................................ 4-3, 7-37
DSK
abbreviation ..................................... 1-6
CUT button ...................................... 5-3
definition ....................................... GL-1
DISS button ....................................... 5-3
Drop feature ..................................... 4-3, 7-37
external, system option ...................... 1-19
isolate ............................................. 4-7, 7-38
matte adjustment ............................. 6-11
PV button ........................................ 7-7
DSK, MultiDSK ................................... 7-35
DVE
abbreviation .................................... 1-6
button ............................................. 2-4, 5-4
reference description ................... 1-5
DVR ................................................ 1-6

E

Edge, soft ........................................ GL-3
Edit Button, setting ......................... 4-4
Editor
enable remote control ...................... 10-9
GVG-100 protocol ......................... 10-9
GVG-4000 protocol ......................... 10-9
interface option, overview .... 1-19
operation ........................................ 10-9
Effects
center cross hairs ......................... 10-7
colorize ......................................... 16-6
Control groups ................................ 6-1
defocus ......................................... 16-3
GPI ................................................ 10-2
KEY1 ............................................ 5-4
KEY2 ............................................ 5-4
Keyers Group ................................ 7-2
menu tree ....................................... 20-2
mosaic ......................................... 16-4
posterize ....................................... 16-5
recall from storage device .......... 9-15
safe title ....................................... 10-8
save to storage devices ............... 9-13
Transition group ......................... 2-4
Effects Control
Mode Table .................................... 6-3
modes ............................................ 6-2
Effects Control Group ..................... 3-2
modes ............................................ 6-2
overview ........................................ 6-2
using the SEL button .......... 6-2
Effects Dissolve .............................. 9-8
creating ........................................ 9-9
multiple channels .................... 9-10
rate ................................................................. 9-9
recall .............................................................. 4-5
working with channels and objects ............ 9-10
Effects Keyers Group, on air indicators ....... 4-11
Electronics frame, reference description .... 1-5
End stop knobs ................................................... 4-12
functionality ..................................................... 6-5
re-synchronize .................................................. 6-5
End-of-life disposal .......................................... 1-8
Environmental Information ......................... 1-8
External key ..................................................... GL-1

F
Fade to Black
button ............................................................. 2-4, 4-13, 5-3
definition .......................................................... GL-1
rates ................................................................. 4-13
Fader
cut with off limit .............................................. 7-41
indicator, transition progress bar ............. 5-2
off limit, transition progress bar .................. 5-2
operations .......................................................... 5-2
transition control ............................................. 5-2
transition progress bar ................................... 5-2
Favorite CG
CHAR GEN .......................................................... 7-40
programming ...................................................... 7-40
Features
comparison chart ............................................. 1-22
reference input ................................................... 1-11
Field ................................................................. GL-1
Field frequency ................................................. GL-1
Fill
matte ............................................................... 8-2
signal ................................................................. 7-2
Film, warp .......................................................... 19-5
FlexiClean ........................................................... 1-12
menu ................................................................. 7-8
MultiDSK ............................................................. 7-8
notes ................................................................. 7-8
Flip Flop operations ........................................... 4-9
Flow of video through the switcher ........... 2-5
FLY KEY
button ............................................................... 7-4
in Effects Control Group ............................... 6-2
Fly Key
in 3D ................................................................. 12-16
Introduction ..................................................... 12-2
MultiDSK ............................................................. 12-16
overview ............................................................ 12-2
rules ................................................................. 12-16
Foreground range, UltraChrome .............. 7-17, 7-26
Frame
definition .......................................................... GL-1
reference description ....................................... 1-5
Freeze ................................................................. GL-13-12
Frequency, line ................................................... GL-2
Frontside/Backside video ......................... 12-24, 12-25, 12-26
FTP
mount point ........................................................ 11-6
Full Reset ............................................................ 4-16
Function
buttons ............................................................ 4-8
memory ............................................................. 9-1, 9-2
switcher ............................................................. 4-8

G
GAIN knob .......................................................... 2-3, 7-5, 7-7
Gain, adjusting .................................................. 7-9
General Button Rules ................................. 4-8
General Purpose Interface ......................... 1-15
Global-Store ....................................................... 1-11
animation .......................................................... 11-20
assigning default stills ................................. 11-23
cancelling a still ............................................. 11-12
creating a directory ......................................... 11-13
default stills ...................................................... 11-23
deleting a still .................................................. 11-16
deleting all stills .............................................. 11-15
field/frame display mode ......................... 11-20
memory recall setup ........................................ 4-6
menu tree .......................................................... 11-9
naming stills ...................................................... 11-12, 17-21
on-air properties ............................................. 11-17
on-air properties, default ......................... 11-21
overview .......................................................... 11-9
renaming a still ............................................. 11-11
selecting a still ................................................. 11-10
still position ...................................................... 11-19
viewing default stills ...................................... 11-24, 11-26
Globe, warp ....................................................... 19-8
GPI
  definition..................................................GL-1
  enable function ........................................ 10-2
  multiDSK.................................................... 7-38
  setup menu tree .......................................... 20-7
GPI, see also General Purpose Interface
Group
  auto transition rate .................................... 2-3
  downstream keyer........................................ 2-3
  effects control .......................................... 6-1, 6-4
  Effects key.................................................. 2-3
  Effects Keyer............................................. 7-2
  effects transition ........................................ 2-4
  matte control ............................................ 2-3
  mattes...................................................... 6-10
  pattern control ........................................... 2-3, 6-1
  positioner .................................................. 2-4
GVG-100 protocol........................................... 10-9
GVG-4000 protocol.......................................... 10-9

H
  HD-SDI, definition......................................... 1-5
  Headings, menu .......................................... 3-4, 3-5
  Heart, warp................................................ 19-11
  Help Menu.................................................. 3-11
  Hide Squeeze & Tease Menus............................ 12-12
Highlights
  digital system ............................................. 1-8
  multi-definition .......................................... 1-8
Hold
  adding to a sequence................................... 17-18
  running in a sequence .................................. 17-25
Horizontal cropping........................................ 13-9
Hotkeys
  crosspoint table ....................................... 22-4
  latch mode ................................................. 22-3
  Squeeze & Tease........................................... 22-2
  using......................................................... 22-3
HUE knob...................................................... 6-10
Hue, definition............................................... GL-2
HUE/TRANSP knob .......................................... 7-4

I
  ID............................................................... 1-6
  Illegal Characters, Global-Store names........ 11-12, 17-21
  Image
    position.................................................... 16-1
    specifications........................................... 11-2
  Image Transfer........................................... 11-5
    copying from switcher................................. 11-8
    copying to switcher.................................... 11-7
    legacy files.............................................. 11-8
    preparing................................................ 11-2
Indicators
  Displays.................................................... 1-15
  ON AIR..................................................... 4-11, 5-6
Input
  primary.................................................... GL-2
  reference................................................... 1-11
  Installation registers, storing...................... 9-13
  Intensity, lighting....................................... 18-4
  Internal key............................................... GL-2
  Introduction to Keying................................... 7-2
Invert
  DSK.......................................................... 7-6
  Key............................................................ 7-4, 8-4

J
  Joystick, see Positioner

K
  Key
    adjusting clip and gain............................... 7-9
    assignment section.................................... 7-5
    auto select............................................. 7-3, 7-5
    auto transition, notes................................ 7-41
    basic rules.............................................. 7-2
    border..................................................... 7-7
    bus......................................................... 2-3
    chroma.................................................... GL-1
    CHROMA KEY.............................................. 7-3
    clip......................................................... 7-4, 7-7
    copy......................................................... 1-11, 10-10
    cut with fader off limit............................. 7-41
    cut with off limit...................................... 7-41
    definition............................................... GL-2
    downstream.............................................. GL-1
    effects..................................................... 5-4
    Effects group........................................... 2-3
    external.................................................. GL-2
    fill, definition.......................................... GL-1
flying in 3D ................................................. 12-16
gain ............................................................ 7-5, 7-7
group basics ..................................................... 7-2
internal ............................................................ GL-2
invert ............................................................ 8-4, GL-2
INVERT button ............................................... 7-4, 7-6
layer ................................................................. 7-2
linear .............................................................. GL-2
luminance ....................................................... GL-2
mask .............................................................. GL-2
MASK button .................................................... 7-4
masking ............................................................ 8-3
matte .............................................................. GL-2
MEM button ..................................................... 7-6
memory ............................................................. 7-6
modifier section ............................................... 7-4, 7-6
modifiers .......... 7-9, 7-10, 7-15, 7-19, 7-21, 7-28
performing a chroma key ..................................... 7-13
performing a preset pattern key ................................ 7-11
performing a self key ............................................. 7-9
performing a split key ........................................... 7-33
performing a split video ......................................... 7-34
performing an auto select key .................................. 7-10
preset pattern .................................................... 7-3
PRG/Key SHIFT mode ........................................... 4-9
self .......................................................... 7-3, 7-5, GL-2
signal ............................................................... 7-2
source ............................................................. GL-2
swap ............................................................. 1-11, 10-11
type section ..................................................... 7-3, 7-5
using ................................................................. 7-9
using matte fill ................................................... 8-2
video .............................................................. GL-2
KEY 1+2 .......................................................... 12-19, 13-3
KEY BUS .......................................................... 4-10
KEY1
enable ............................................................... 5-4
matte adjustment ............................................... 6-11
KEY2
enable ............................................................... 5-4
matte adjustment ............................................... 6-11
Keyers ............................................................. 1-11, 7-1, 8-1
downstream ...................................................... 1-11
downstream, group ............................................. 7-5
groups ............................................................. 7-2
Keyframes
modifying ....................................................... 17-14
programming ................................................... 17-2
Keying
Downstream Keyer Group ...................................... 7-5
Effects Keyer Group ........................................... 7-2
FlexiClean notes .................................................. 7-8
introduction ...................................................... 7-2
Key Group basics ............................................... 7-2
Knob
adjust hue/transparency ....................................... 7-4
clip ........................................................... 7-4, 7-7
dead stop ......................................................... 6-5
GAIN ............................................................. 7-5
gain ............................................................. 7-7
HUE ............................................................. 6-10
HUE/TRANS............................... 7-4
LUM .............................................................. 6-11
overview ....................................................... 4-12
re-synchronize ................................................. 6-5
SAT .............................................................. 6-10

L
Layer, key ............................................................. 7-2
Layering ............................................................ 12-23
LED, ON AIR ......................................................... 5-5
Legend, Navigation ............................................... 3-4
Lens Flare, warp ............................................... 19-14
Lighting
ambient ......................................................... 18-1, 18-5
background ....................................................... 7-30
directional .......... 18-1, 18-3, 18-4, 18-5, 18-6
foreground (talent) ............................................. 7-31
intensity ............................................................ 18-4
luminance clipping ............................................. 18-1, 18-7
model ............................................................. 18-1
presets ............................................................ 18-4
working with multiple channels ................................ 18-8
Limit transition ................................................... 5-12
Line frequency ..................................................... GL-2
Linear key .......................................................... GL-2
Linear motion ..................................................... 17-3, 17-28
Load, see Recall
Loading
sequences ....................................................... 17-20
wipes ......................................................... 17-31
Locate ................................................................. 14-5
LUM knob ................................................................. 6-11
Luminance
  control ................................................................. 7-4
  key ................................................................ GL-2
  matte ................................................................. 6-11
Luminance clipping .................................................. 18-1, 18-7

M
Manual Transitions .................................................. 5-10
MASK ................................................................. GL-2
  button ................................................................. 7-6
  keys .................................................................. 8-3
Matrix Wipes .......................................................... 6-9
Matte ................................................................. GL-2
  color knobs ......................................................... 6-10
  control group ...................................................... 2-3
  destination section ............................................ 6-2, 6-11
  fill, using ........................................................... 8-2
  generators .......................................................... 1-11
HUE ................................................................. 6-10
LUM ................................................................. 6-11
SAT ................................................................. 6-10
Matte adjustment, Squeeze & Tease ......................... 6-12
MATTE FILL button ............................................ 7-4, 7-7
Matte Key, definition ............................................. GL-2
Matte Control Group
  matte color knobs ............................................ 6-10
  matte destination section .................................. 6-11
  overview .......................................................... 6-10
Melt, warp ............................................................. 19-17
MEM button .......................................................... 9-2
Memory
  Auto Recall .......................................................... 4-5
  Banks and Registers ............................................ 9-2
  Chroma key .......................................................... 7-30
  definition .......................................................... GL-2
  effects dissolve .................................................. 9-8
  functions ........................................................... 9-1, 9-2
  Registers, recalling .......................................... 9-5
  Registers, storing .............................................. 9-3
Memory registers
  advanced recall .................................................. 9-6
  advanced store .................................................. 9-4
  quick recall ....................................................... 9-5
  quick store ....................................................... 9-3
  recall, notes on .................................................. 9-6
  recalling ........................................................... 9-5
  storing ............................................................. 9-3, 9-13
Menu
  background .......................................................... 3-4
  button ............................................................... 3-2
  channel listing .................................................. 12-18
  Disk .................................................................. 9-12
  disk .................................................................. 17-33, 17-34
  headings ............................................................ 3-4, 3-5
  Hide Squeeze & Tease ........................................ 12-12
  Information ........................................................ 3-3
  Items ................................................................. 3-4, 3-5
  lighting ............................................................... 18-2
  load/save sequence ............................................ 17-9, 17-15, 17-17, 17-19
  Modify Keyframes ............................................. 17-15
  pre processor ..................................................... 19-2
  runtime .............................................................. 17-26, 17-32
  sequence ........................................................... 17-4
  sequence name .................................................. 17-21
  Show Squeeze & Tease ........................................ 12-12
  Squeeze & Tease ................................................ 12-12
  system, using .................................................... 3-2
  title ................................................................. 3-4
  trees ................................................................. 20-1
  Types ............................................................... 3-3
  Types, Navigation .............................................. 3-3
  user wipe .......................................................... 6-7
  MENU button ...................................................... 2-3
Menu Button, setting .............................................. 4-4
Menu Tree
  additional installation setup ................................ 20-6
  audio communication setup ................................ 20-9
  BNC configuration ............................................. 20-4
  Editor Communication setup ................................ 20-8
  effects menu .................................................... 20-2
  GPI setup .......................................................... 20-7
  options menu ................................................... 20-3
  Output BNC configuration .................................. 20-5
  section ............................................................... 20-1
  serial tally communication setup ......................... 20-10
Menues, using the positioner ................................... 12-10
Mix
  definition .......................................................... GL-2
  transitions ....................................................... 5-1
MLE
  abbreviation ..................................................... 1-6
definition ....................................................... GL-2
effects system ............................................. 1-11
keyers .......................................................... 1-11
matte generators ......................................... 1-11
preview ....................................................... 1-11
Modify
Keyframes Menu ........................................... 17-15
keyframes, sequences ................................. 17-14
keys .............................................................. 7-4, 7-6
Momentary buttons ....................................... 4-8
Mosaic effect ............................................... 16-4
Motion parallax ............................................ 12-5
MultiDSK ...................................................... 1-19, 7-35
  GPI control ................................................ 7-38
  Synergy 100 ............................................... 7-35
MultiDSK Fly Key ......................................... 12-16
Multiple channels
borders ....................................................... 15-12
effects dissolve ......................................... 9-10
lighting ......................................................... 18-8

N
Navigation Legend .................................... 3-4
Navigation Menu Type ............................... 3-3
Next Transition
  buttons .................................................... 5-5
  procedure ................................................ 5-8
  working with .......................................... 5-5

O
Obscure, warp ............................................ 19-19
ON AIR
  Crosspoint Indicators ................................ 4-11
  Effects Keyers Group indicators .................. 4-11
  indicators ............................................. 4-11
  LED ...................................................... 5-5
  states .................................................. 5-6
  Transition Control Group indicators ............. 4-11
On-air properties
  Global-Store, adjusting ............................ 11-17
  Global-Store, default ............................... 11-21
Operations
crosspoints ............................................... 4-8
cut ................................................................ 5-10
dissolve .................................................... 5-11
flip flop ..................................................... 4-9
  function buttons ....................................... 4-8
Menu System ............................................. 3-7
  preset black .......................................... 5-14
  PRG/Key SHIFT mode ................................. 4-9
shift buttons ............................................. 4-8
switcher basics .......................................... 4-8
wipes ....................................................... 6-6
Operator, reference description .................. 1-5
Options ..................................................... 1-16
  Control Panel Redundant Power .................. 1-20
  conversion frames .................................... 1-16
  Custom Cable, Control Panel ...................... 1-20
  Editor Interface ....................................... 1-19, 10-9
  Frame Redundant Power ............................ 1-20
  menu tree .............................................. 20-3
  MultiDSK ............................................... 1-19
  remote aux panel ..................................... 1-18
  Serial Tally Interface ............................... 1-19
  Small Audio Mixer Interface ...................... 1-19
  Spare Parts Kit ...................................... 1-20
  Squeeze & Tease ...................................... 2-4
  Squeeze & Tease MD ................................ 1-17
  Squeeze & Tease MD Carrier Board ............... 1-16
  Squeeze & Tease MD WARP ......................... 1-18
  Squeeze & Tease WARP .............................. 2-4
OUTL button ............................................. 2-3, 7-7
Outline key ................................................. 7-7
Output
  PGM ....................................................... GL-2
  PV ........................................................ GL-2
Output BNC configuration menu tree ............ 20-5
Overlay
  Center Cross Hairs .................................. 1-12
  Preview ............................................... 10-7
  safe area ............................................... 1-12
  safe title .............................................. 1-12
Overview
  knobs .................................................... 4-12
  Product ................................................. 1-8

P
Page Roll, warp ........................................ 19-22
Panel, standard features ............................. 1-10
Pattern
  adjustment section .................................... 6-5
  aspect ratio .......................................... 6-5
Peripheral Control ................................................ 10-1
Personality registers ........................................... 20-6
Personality Menu tree........................................... 20-6
Positioner
  3-Axis ........................................................... 8-6
  group............................................................. 2-4
  operation ....................................................... 8-6
  using.................................................................. 12-10
Posterize effect .................................................. 16-5
Preprocessor effects
  colorize .......................................................... 16-6
  defocus .......................................................... 16-3
  mosaic ............................................................ 16-4
  posterize ......................................................... 16-5
Preset Black ....................................................... 5-14
Preset Bus ........................................................... 2-2
Preset Pattern Key, performing ............................ 7-11
Preview
  MLE .................................................................. 1-11
  sequences ....................................................... 17-22
  transition ........................................................ GL-3
  transition, procedure ...................................... 5-13
  transitions ....................................................... 4-2
Preview Overlay .................................................. 10-7
PRG/Key SHIFT mode .......................................... 4-9
Primary Input, definition ....................................... GL-2
Product
  comparison charts .......................................... 1-22
  highlights ....................................................... 1-8
  overview ........................................................ 1-8
Program Background bus ...................................... 2-2
Programming, keyframes ...................................... 17-2
Protocol
  GVG-100 .......................................................... 10-9
  GVG-4000 .......................................................... 10-9
PST
  BLACK button .................................................. 5-3
  BLACK, operations .......................................... 5-14
  bus................................................................... 1-6, 2-2
  PATT ............................................................... 1-6
  PATT button .................................................... 2-4
  PATT key .......................................................... 7-3
PV
  abbreviation .................................................... 1-6
  output ............................................................. GL-2
Q
Quick Recall ....................................................... 9-5
Quick Store ....................................................... 9-3
R
Rate
   Effects Dissolve ....................................... 9-9
   Fade to Black .......................................... 4-13
Recall
   Advanced Recall ...................................... 9-5
   advanced, procedure .................................. 9-6
   Auto Recall ............................................. 4-5
   configurations from storage device ............. 9-15
   memories, bus hold .................................. 9-7
   memories, using GPI .................................. 9-7
   memory registers ...................................... 9-5
   Quick Recall .......................................... 9-5
   quick, procedure ...................................... 9-5
   registers from storage device ..................... 9-15
   registers, notes ....................................... 9-6
Recalling
   sequences and wipes ............................... 17-26, 17-37
   sets of sequences ................................. 17-37
   specific sequences ................................ 17-38
Redundant Power
   control panel ......................................... 1-20
   frame ................................................... 1-20
Reference Description
   Control Panel .................................... 1-5
   DVE ..................................................... 1-5
   Frame .................................................. 1-5
   Operator .............................................. 1-5
   SDI ..................................................... 1-5
   Storage Device ..................................... 1-5
   Switcher ............................................. 1-5
   User ................................................... 1-5
   Video System ....................................... 1-5
Reference input ..................................... 1-11
Registers
   installation ........................................... 9-13
   memory ................................................. 9-13
   personality .......................................... 9-13
   recall from storage device ....................... 9-15
   recalling .............................................. 9-5
   store to storage devices ......................... 9-13
   storing ................................................. 9-3
Remote Aux Panels
   assign group ......................................... 10-5
   assignable ........................................... 1-18
   feature ............................................... 1-18
   overview ............................................. 10-5
   positioning .......................................... 1-19
Renaming
   sequences .......................................... 17-21
   still, Global-Store .................................. 11-11
Repair policy ....................................... 1-7
Reset
   full ....................................................... 4-16
   software .............................................. 2-7
   system .................................................. 4-15
Restart, Switcher .................................... 2-9, 4-16
Re-synchronize knobs .......................... 6-5
REV/LEARN button ............................... 6-4, 7-7, 9-2
Reverse wipe direction .......................... 6-4
Ripple, warp ......................................... 19-25
Ross Video catalog ................................. 1-16
Rotary Wipes .......................................... 6-9
ROTATE button ....................................... 6-5
Rotation
   adjusting ............................................. 13-7
   channel ................................................. 12-7
   Pivot location ....................................... 13-5
   point of ............................................ 13-5
RU ......................................................... 1-6
Rules, general, button .......................... 4-8
Running
   a sequence with a Hold ......................... 17-25
   wipes .................................................. 17-32
S
S&T MD
   control options ..................................... 12-8
   multiple channel control ......................... 12-9
   single channel control ............................ 12-8
S&T MD, see Squeeze & Tease
Safe
   action ................................................. 10-8
   area .................................................... 1-12
   title .................................................. 1-12, 10-8
Sand, warp ........................................... 19-27
SAT knob ............................................. 6-10
Saturation, matte .................................. 6-10
Save, see Store
SDI, reference description .................. 1-5
Section
   auto transition rate ............................... 2-3
   control panel overview .......................... 2-2
   downstream keyer .................................. 2-3

Synergy 100 MD Operator's Manual (v7.2 MD-S100)

Index • IX–11
effects key group ................................................................. 2-3
effects transition group ................................................................. 2-4
fade to black button ................................................................. 2-4
key assignment ................................................................. 7-5
key modifier ................................................................. 7-4, 7-6
key type ................................................................. 7-3, 7-5
matte color knobs ................................................................. 6-10
matte control group ................................................................. 2-3
matte destination ................................................................. 6-2, 6-11
next transition ................................................................. 5-4
pattern adjustment ................................................................. 6-5
pattern control group ................................................................. 2-3
pattern direction ................................................................. 6-4
positioner group ................................................................. 2-4
SEL button
left ........................................................................ 6-2
middle ........................................................................ 6-11
right ........................................................................ 6-11
Selecting
matte generators ................................................................. 6-11
wipe direction ................................................................. 6-4
wipe pattern ................................................................. 6-4
wipes ................................................................. 6-7
with Key Bus ........................................................................ 7-2
Self Key
definition ................................................................. GL-2
luminance ................................................................. 7-3, 7-5
performing ................................................................. 7-9
Sequences
adding a Hold ................................................................. 17-18
creating ................................................................. 17-6
deleting ................................................................. 17-22
loading ................................................................. 17-20
memories ................................................................. 17-22
menu ................................................................. 17-4
Modify Keyframes menu ................................................................. 17-15
modifying keyframes ................................................................. 17-14
overview ................................................................. 17-2
previewing ................................................................. 17-22
Product Resource CD ................................................................. 21-2
recalling ................................................................. 17-26
recalling from disk ................................................................. 17-37
renaming ................................................................. 17-21
running ................................................................. 17-26
running with a Hold ................................................................. 17-25
storing ................................................................. 9-13
storing to disk ................................................................. 17-33
with Frontside/Backside video ................................................................. 12-25
working with ................................................................. 17-2
Serial Tally Interface ................................................................. 1-19
Service ................................................................. 1-21
Setup
Edit Button ................................................................. 4-4
Menu Button ................................................................. 4-4
Shadow
button ................................................................. 2-3, 7-7
chroma key ................................................................. 7-23
key ................................................................. 7-7
UltraChrome ................................................................. 7-23
SHDW button ................................................................. 2-3, 7-7
Shift buttons ................................................................. 4-8
Show Squeeze & Tease Menus ................................................................. 12-12
Shutdown, Switcher ................................................................. 2-8, 4-17
Signal
fill signal ................................................................. 7-2
key signal ................................................................. 7-2
Sleep Mode
delay ................................................................. 4-3
setup ................................................................. 4-3
switcher ................................................................. 2-6
Sleep Time ................................................................. 4-3
Slew, see Effects Dissolve
Slots, Synergy ................................................................. 1-16
Small Audio Mixer Interface ................................................................. 1-19
Smooth motion ................................................................. 17-3, 17-28
Soft
cut ................................................................. 5-12
edge, definition ................................................................. GL-3
SOFT knob ................................................................. 6-5
Software
reset ................................................................. 2-7
Version ................................................................. 3-4
Spare Parts Kit ................................................................. 1-20
Special wipes ................................................................. 6-9
Specifications, image ................................................................. 11-2
Spin ................................................................. 14-3
Spline motion ................................................................. 17-3, 17-28
Split
key, introduction ................................................................. 7-33
key, performing ................................................................. 7-33
video ................................................................. 7-33
video, performing ................................................................. 7-34
Split screen, definition ................................................................. GL-3
Split, warp ................................................................. 19-29
Squeeze & Tease
aspect ratio .................................................. 13-8
border size .................................................. 15-3
border softness ............................................. 15-4
border symmetry ........................................... 15-5
border transparency ...................................... 15-6
borders and matte adjustment ....................... 6-12
Carrier Board .............................................. 1-16
channel centering ......................................... 12-8
channel location .......................................... 12-3
carrier resources .......................................... 12-18
channel rotation .......................................... 12-7
colorize ...................................................... 16-6
cropping, horizontal ..................................... 13-9
cropping, vertical ........................................ 13-10
defocus ...................................................... 16-3
effects dissolve .......................................... 9-8
features ...................................................... 1-17
freeze ....................................................... 13-12
Hotkeys ..................................................... 22-2
locate ....................................................... 14-5
matte adjustment ......................................... 6-12
Menu ......................................................... 12-12
Menus, Hide ................................................ 12-12
Menus, Show .............................................. 12-12
mosaic ....................................................... 16-4
motion parallax .......................................... 12-5
option ......................................................... 2-4
overview .................................................... 12-3
perspective .................................................. 12-5
pivot location .............................................. 13-5
pivot position .............................................. 13-6
pivot preset .................................................. 13-5
position ....................................................... 13-3, 16-1
position coordinates .................................... 12-3
posterize ..................................................... 16-5
raster and channel location ......................... 12-4
rotation ...................................................... 13-7
sequences, storing ........................................ 9-13
spin ............................................................ 14-3
transparency ............................................... 13-11
viewpoint .................................................... 12-6, 14-4
WARP option .............................................. 1-18
Squeeze & Tease Carrier Board ..................... 1-16
Squeeze & Tease Overview ......................... 12-2
Standard Features ....................................... 1-10

Star, warp .................................................. 19-31
Static discharge .......................................... 1-6
Still image
  cancelling in Global-Store ............................... 11-12
  default, Global-Store .................................. 11-23
  deleting in Global-Store ................................ 11-15
  renaming in Global-Store ............................... 11-11
  selecting in Global-Store ............................... 11-10
  viewing default, Global-Store ......................... 11-24, 11-26
Storage Device
  functions .................................................. 9-1
  recall configurations from ......................... 9-15
  recall individual registers ......................... 9-15
  reference description .................................. 1-5
  store effects .............................................. 9-13
Store
  Advanced Store ........................................ 9-3
  effects to storage device ............................ 9-13
  memory registers ...................................... 9-3
  Quick procedure ........................................ 9-3
  Quick Store .............................................. 9-3
  registers to storage device .......................... 9-13
  Squeeze & Tease sequences ......................... 17-33
Storing
  Squeeze & Tease sequences .......................... 9-13
Stretch, warp ............................................. 19-34
Support, technical ...................................... 1-21
Swap
  functions .................................................. 10-10
  Key ......................................................... 10-11
Switcher
  basic operating procedures ......................... 4-1
  basics ...................................................... 4-8
  crosspoint buttons ..................................... 4-8
  function buttons ........................................ 4-8
  reference description .................................. 1-5
  restart ....................................................... 2-9
  shift buttons .............................................. 4-8
  shutdown ................................................... 2-8
timeout ...................................................... 2-6
video flow .................................................. 2-5
Switcher Restart ......................................... 4-16
Switcher shutdown ....................................... 4-17
Synergy 100 MD
  MultiDSK .................................................. 7-35
  overview ................................................... 1-8
  panel ......................................................... 3-2
product highlights .................................................. 1-8
standard features .................................................. 1-10
Synergy Slots .......................................................... 1-16
System
  control buttons .................................................. 5-9
  control display .................................................. 3-2
  digital ............................................................. 1-8
  memory ............................................................. 9-2
  options ............................................................ 1-16
  reset ................................................................. 4-15

Tallies
  emergency bypass ................................................ 1-15
  frame ................................................................. 1-19
Tally, definition ..................................................... GL-3
TD, definition ......................................................... 1-6
Technical support .................................................... 1-21
Termination, definition ......................................... GL-3
Terms, documentation ........................................... 1-5
Threshold control ................................................... 7-4
Time, sleep ............................................................ 4-3
Timeline .............................................................. 17-7, 17-8, 17-9
Timeout, switcher .................................................. 2-6
TRANS LIMIT button ................................................ 5-2, 5-12
Transition
  auto ................................................................. 7-41
  auto, definition .................................................. GL-1
  auto, rules for ................................................... 5-8
  auto, set rates ................................................... 5-9
  automatic, auto transition .................................... 5-6
  automatic, cut transition ..................................... 5-6
  BKGD ............................................................... 5-4
  control group ..................................................... 5-2
  cut ................................................................. 5-10
  definition ......................................................... GL-3
  dissolve .......................................................... 5-11
  effects key ....................................................... 5-4
  flash-frame ....................................................... 5-14
  group ............................................................... 5-2
  limit procedure .................................................. 5-12
  limit, recall memory registers ................................ 9-6
  manual ............................................................ 5-6, 5-10
  mix and background .......................................... 5-1
  next ................................................................. 5-4
  next transition procedure .................................... 5-8

preview ............................................................... GL-3
preview, procedure ............................................... 5-3
rate, button properties .......................................... 5-9
rates, automatic .................................................... 5-9
type section .......................................................... 5-3
types ................................................................. 5-1
Transition Control Group, on air indicators .................. 4-11
Transition Preview ................................................ 4-2
Translucency, UltraChrome ..................................... 7-24
Transparency ......................................................... 13-11
TransPV, setup ..................................................... 4-2
Types of Menus ....................................................... 3-3

U
UltraChrome .......................................................... 1-11
  additional tips and considerations ......................... 7-31
  advanced controls ............................................. 1-12
  Background range ............................................. 7-17, 7-25
  basic controls ................................................... 1-12
  color map ......................................................... 7-15, 7-22
  Color Pick ......................................................... 7-14, 7-21
  Foreground range ............................................. 7-17, 7-26
  lighting the background .................................... 7-30
  lighting the foreground ..................................... 7-31
  lighting tips ..................................................... 7-30
  memory ........................................................... 7-30
  performing ....................................................... 7-13
  Shadow ............................................................ 7-23
  Translucency ..................................................... 7-24
Up Arrow (1) button .................................................. 3-3
USB Drive
  Disk Menu Tree .................................................. 9-12
  notes on using .................................................. 9-16
  recalling registers to ......................................... 9-15
  saving registers to ........................................... 9-13
  storing specific sequence .................................. 17-34
User
  reference description ......................................... 1-5
  wipe menu ....................................................... 6-7
Using
  auto select key .................................................. 7-10
  aux bus ........................................................... 10-3
  chroma key ...................................................... 7-13
  keys ............................................................... 7-9
  menu system ..................................................... 3-7
  positioner ....................................................... 12-10
preset pattern key ........................................... 7-11
self key .......................................................... 7-9
split key ......................................................... 7-33
wipes ................................................................ 6-6

Utility
Bus.............................................................. 12-19
Channel....................................................... 12-19

V
VCR, definition ...................................................... 1-6
Vertical cropping ............................................. 13-10

Video
definition ....................................................... GL-3
flow through the switcher ............................... 2-5

Video system, reference description ................. 1-5

Viewpoint ....................................................... 14-4

VTR, definition ...................................................... 1-6

W
WARP
Accessing ........................................................ 19-2
borders and matte adjustment ......................... 6-12
Film ................................................................ 19-5
Globe ............................................................. 19-8
Heart ............................................................. 19-11
Lens Flare ....................................................... 19-14
Melt .............................................................. 19-17
Obscure .......................................................... 19-19
option overview ............................................. 1-18
Page Roll ........................................................ 19-22
Pixie Dust ....................................................... 19-23
resources ....................................................... 19-3
resources, freeing ......................................... 19-3
Ripple .............................................................. 19-25
Sand .............................................................. 19-27
Split ............................................................... 19-29
Star ............................................................... 19-31
Stretch ........................................................... 19-34
wipe ............................................................... 19-2

WARP Effects ..................................................... 19-5

Warranty .......................................................... 1-7

WebDAV
connection .................................................... 11-5
mount point .................................................... 11-5
transferring images ........................................ 11-7
worksheet ....................................................... 11-5

Wipe
adjust pattern .................................................. 6-5
aspect ratio ..................................................... 6-5
border ............................................................ 6-5
button, positioner ........................................... 2-4
button, Transition Type Section ....................... 5-4
classic ............................................................. 6-8
definition ....................................................... GL-3
matrix ............................................................. 6-9
matte adjustment ............................................ 6-11
overview ....................................................... 6-4
reverse direction ............................................. 6-4
rotary ............................................................. 6-9
select direction .............................................. 6-4
select pattern .................................................. 6-4
selecting ......................................................... 6-7
softness ......................................................... 6-5
special ............................................................ 6-9
user menu ....................................................... 6-7
using .............................................................. 6-6
WARP ........................................................... 19-2
WIPE button ................................................... 2-4, 5-4

Wipes
background .................................................... 17-27
creating ........................................................ 17-29
definition ...................................................... 17-29
loading .......................................................... 17-31
modifier ......................................................... 17-30
overview ...................................................... 17-27
Product Resources CD ................................... 21-2
recalling from disk ....................................... 17-37
running ........................................................ 17-32
storing to disk .............................................. 17-33
types available ............................................. 17-30
with Frontside/Backside video ....................... 12-26